

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY

OU\_160924

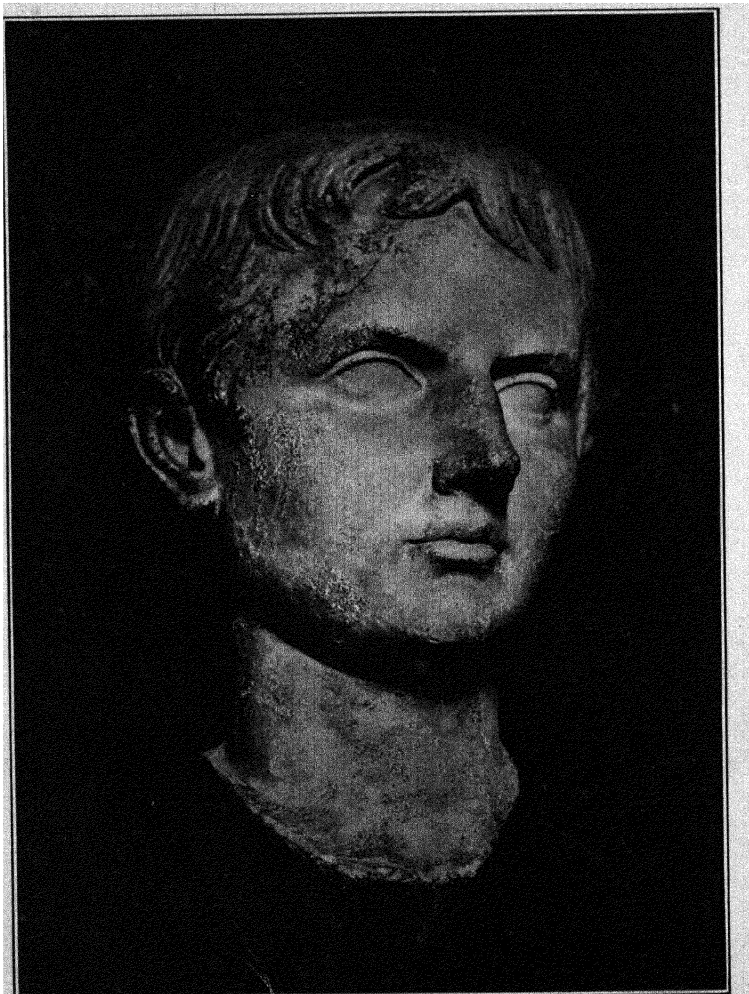
UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY







**AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN**



ROMAN BOY

AN  
INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

BY  
JOHN COPELAND KIRTLAND  
AND  
GEORGE BENJAMIN ROGERS  
OF  
THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN COMPANY  
EXETER, NEW HAMPSHIRE

1940

*All rights reserved*

COPYRIGHT, 1914,

By JOHN C. KIRTLAND AND GEORGE B. ROGERS.

---

Set up and electrotyped. Published June, 1914. Reprinted  
January, 1915; February, 1916; January, 1927; March,  
1934; September, 1940.

SET UP AND ELECTROTYPED BY J. S. CUSHING CO.  
PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA  
BY BERWICK & SMITH CO.

## PREFACE

WHETHER this book realizes the claim made in its title will be determined by the way in which the boys and girls who have used it do their first reading. It should prepare them to begin with some advantage the study of Caesar or Nepos. We have carefully examined the vocabulary and syntax of these authors, together with *Fabulae Faciles*, Eutropius, and *Viri Romae*, and our choice of words and constructions has been largely based upon their common usage.

Paradigms are given, for the most part, only in the Conspectus of Inflections at the back of the book, where the student will see them entire. This arrangement is supported by two considerations. First, many inflections can be built up from elements already known, and the student will learn them more easily from directions for making the forms than from a paradigm. Secondly, there should be much comparison of forms, that associations may be established as an aid to the memory and the judgment. The verb has been presented with reference to tense-signs. A presentation by conjugation or by voice separates forms that properly go together and makes less effective use of the principle of association.

The future imperative is omitted from the paradigms of the verb, and other rare forms are omitted wherever the omission makes a paradigm easier. On the other hand, we have avoided incomplete paradigms by including forms that might have been employed by a Roman, though they happen not to occur in the extant literature. The neuter of the perfect participle, or the supine, is given as the fourth of the principal parts of verbs, because this answers for intransitive verbs as well as transitive and for those that lack either perfect participle or supine.

Syntax can be firmly grasped only through reading, and no more should be taught in the first year of Latin than is required to vital-

ize forms and make the student familiar with the constructions which he will meet most frequently in the second year. Furthermore, the treatment should be as simple as possible, and it should not be carried beyond the immediate need of the student. We have named only one use of the genitive, for instance, since the translation of the form generally tells all that the student needs to know at this stage. If the translation will cause no difficulty, but the construction must be treated for another reason, the treatment is, so far as is practical, inductive. The sections dealing with syntax follow the Latin exercises, and appear as explanations of the exercises. Formal rules are given at the back of the book, but they can be disregarded, or in their place the teacher can give to the class the wording of the rules in the grammar which it is to use later. What is essential is that explanation and understanding should be placed ahead of a stereotyped rule.

The simplicity of the book gave no occasion for the employment of many of the names recommended by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature in the report recently approved by the National Education Association, but our terminology, so far as it goes, has been closely conformed to that recommended. We have rejected only one term — ‘past’ for participle and infinitive. This term is helpful in the treatment of syntax, but it would, in our opinion, confuse the student who is learning the conjugation of the verb. We believe also that it would be confusing at this stage to employ the two names ‘gerundive’ and ‘future passive participle’ to distinguish two uses of the same forms. It has seemed sufficient to call *idem* demonstrative, and the specific term ‘identifying’ has not been used. That the past indicative and subjunctive might not be separated, we have added ‘descriptive’ to the name of the former only in distinguishing the force of this tense from the past absolute force of the perfect, not in the paradigms.

The Latin-English Vocabulary includes all words found in the reading-lessons of connected narrative, except some proper nouns and adjectives. Words of this kind are given only when the English name is different, the nominative is not evident from other

forms, or the person or place is not familiar; and the person or place is not described when the text itself contains sufficient explanation. The total number of Latin words used in the book, exclusive of proper nouns and adjectives, is a little over seven hundred. Many of these words are closely related: for instance, **absum** and **absēns**; **lātus** and **lātē**; **filius** and **filia**; **dux**, **dūcō**, **addūcō**, **dēdūcō**, **ēdūcō**, **indūcō**, **redūcō**, and **trādūcō**. About 85 per cent. of the whole number are given by Professor Lodge (*Vocabulary of High School Latin*) among the words of most frequent occurrence in Caesar. A large part of the remainder are required for the adequate treatment of inflection and syntax, or because of their meaning: for instance, **iste**, **tū**, **mālō**, **prōsum**, **similis**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **vescor**, **-ne**, **num**, **meus**, **tuus**, **vester**.

We have made more of etymology than is usual in books intended for beginners, but the derivative and cognate words which we give are put where they can be disregarded. We hope, however, that there will be a disposition to add to this material rather than subtract from it, especially on the English side. The clue to a word's meaning is its derivation, and even in the first year of Latin it is possible to begin to approach words with this guidance. We have given no etymologies that we do not believe helpful to the memory or in other ways. How far they shall be explained is left to the teacher.

The fourteen reading-lessons have been freely adapted from Eutropius, Nepos's *Hannibal*, and Caesar's *Helvetian War*. It has not seemed worth while to attempt greater historical accuracy than that of the Roman writers themselves. The reading-lessons are an integral part of the book. As the fewness of the notes on them indicates, they contain practically nothing that has not been given already in the other lessons. They can, therefore, either be read at sight or used for set reviews.

Some things commonly contained in books of this sort we have unhesitatingly omitted. One of these is a summary review of English grammar. No such review can answer the purposes of all schools; and if a review is necessary, it should either be given

by the English teachers of the school or brought into agreement with their teaching. But ignorance of grammatical terms and rules will usually be remedied most effectively by supplying the information needed with reference to the Latin that is before the class. We have omitted the rules for natural gender, which serve no practical purpose for the beginner. We believe that printed *colloquia* have no value for the student, however valuable may be the use of Latin speech in the drill of the classroom.

We have omitted also some fine details of pronunciation. Rare sounds can be taught more profitably in the few words in which they occur than in a table. It would be particularly unprofitable to present in our table diphthongs which are found in this book in only one or two words, while the letters composing them are distinct vowels in most of the words in which they occur in juxtaposition. Vowels are marked long before consonantal *i*, in the belief that the student's pronunciation of words so printed will be likely to be more nearly correct than if the vowels were left unmarked. There is no simple way of indicating the diphthongal sound before consonantal *i*, and it is more easily taught by example than by precept, as indeed are all sounds.

The advance lesson should always be explained when it is assigned, and the new words pronounced. Often the class can be shown how to build up the new forms, and the learning of the paradigm be deprived thereby of all terror. The authors have found it best in their own teaching to assign for the advance lesson only inflections and vocabulary, and to have both the Latin-English and the English-Latin sentences discussed in class before they are set for outside study. This insures attention to the more important things and removes the temptation to dishonest preparation of lessons. It will be found, we hope, that our treatment of syntax is such as should be given by the teacher when new sentences are taken up at sight.

The division of the book into lessons should not be understood to indicate the proper daily assignment. The amount that can be done each day must be determined for a particular class by the

teacher. Not only are new words and constructions used in the exercises of three successive lessons, but forms, syntax, vocabulary, and idioms are constantly reviewed by frequent repetition throughout the book.

We owe much to friends who have read the proof-sheets of our book, correcting mistakes and suggesting improvements ; and we wish to express here our gratitude for this help given us by Professor R. W. Husband, of Dartmouth College, Mr. A. L. Hodges, of the Wadleigh High School, New York City, Mr. B. M. Allen, of Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass., Mr. M. M. Hart, of the McKinley High School, St. Louis, and Dr. C. H. Clark, Mr. F. N. Robinson, Dr. W. H. Gillespie, and Dr. A. R. Wightman, all of Phillips Exeter Academy. The photograph for one of our illustrations was obtained through the kindness of Mr. G. F. Hill, of the Department of Coins and Medals in the British Museum.

JOHN C. KIRTLAND.  
GEORGE B. ROGERS.

EXETER, N.H., 25 April, 1914.



## CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
I. Alphabet. Sounds. Doubled Consonants. Quantity of Vowels. Syllables. Quantity of Syllables. Accent . . . . .	1
II. <b>Present Indicative Active, First Conjugation.</b> Personal Endings. Number in Nouns. <i>Agreement of Verb</i> . . . . .	4
III. <b>Present Indicative Active.</b> Present Stem. <b>Present Infinitive Active.</b> Infinitive Ending. Order of Words . . . . .	6
IV. <b>First Declension.</b> <i>Subject. Direct Object.</i> Position of Adverb. Position of <i>-ne</i> . . . . .	8
V. <b>Present Indicative Passive, First Conjugation.</b> Personal Endings. <i>Ablative of Agent</i> . . . . .	10
VI. <b>Present Indicative Passive</b> . . . . .	11
VII. <b>Past Indicative Active.</b> Personal Endings. Tense-Sign. Use of the Past. <i>Indirect Object.</i> Position of the Objects . . . . .	13
VIII. <b>Past Indicative Passive.</b> <i>Ablative of Means</i> . . . . .	15
IX. <b>Second Declension: Nouns in us and um.</b> Gender. Case-Endings. <i>Agreement of Noun</i> . . . . .	17
X. <b>First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in us, a, um.</b> <b>Second Declension: Nouns in ius and ium.</b> Exception to Rule for Accent. <i>Agreement of Adjective.</i> Position of Adjective . . . . .	19
XI. <b>Future Indicative, First and Second Conjugations.</b> Tense-Sign. <i>Dative with Adjectives</i> . . . . .	21
XII. <b>Second Declension: Nouns in er, and vir.</b> Gender. <b>First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in er, a, um.</b> <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i> . . . . .	23
XIII. <b>Future Indicative, Third and Fourth Conjugations.</b> Tense-Sign. <i>Ablative of Cause or Reason</i> . . . . .	25
XIV. <b>The Irregular Verb sum.</b> <i>Descriptive Genitive and Ablative</i> . . . . .	27
XV. <b>Demonstrative Pronouns: hic, ille, iste.</b> Use of <i>hic, ille, iste</i> . . . . .	29
XVI. <b>Perfect Indicative Active.</b> Personal Endings. Uses of the Perfect . . . . .	30
XVII. <b>Perfect Indicative Passive.</b> Principal Parts . . . . .	32

LESSON	PAGE
THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME . . . . .	35
XVIII. <b>Demonstrative Pronouns: <i>is</i> and <i>idem</i>.</b> Use of <i>is</i> . <i>Ablative of Separation</i> . . . . .	36
XIX. <b>Past Perfect Indicative</b> . . . . .	38
XX. <b>Relative Pronoun.</b> <i>Agreement of Relative Pronoun</i> . . . . .	40
XXI. <b>Interrogative Pronoun</b> . . . . .	41
XXII. <b>Future Perfect Indicative.</b> <i>Future Tenses in Subordinate Clauses</i> . . . . .	43
XXIII. <b>Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>um</i>.</b> Case-Endings. Gender. <i>Present Indicative with <i>dum</i></i> . . . . .	45
XXIV. <b>Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>um</i></b> (continued). <i>Perfect Indicative with <i>postquam</i> and <i>ubi</i></i> . . . . .	47
THE EARLY REPUBLIC . . . . .	49
XXV. <b>Third Declension: Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>um</i>.</b> <i>Ablative of Respect</i> . . . . .	51
XXVI. <b>Third Conjugation: Verbs in <i>iō</i></b> . . . . .	53
XXVII. <b>Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>ium</i>.</b> Case-Endings . . . . .	55
XXVIII. <b>Third Declension: Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>ium</i>.</b> Case-Endings. Nouns with Genitive Plural in <i>ium</i> . . . . .	57
XXIX. <b>Personal Pronouns.</b> Personal Use of <i>is</i> . Omission of Subject. Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	59
THE FIRST PUNIC WAR . . . . .	61
XXX. <b>Reflexive Pronoun. Intensive Pronoun.</b> Use of Reflexive Pronoun. Use of Intensive Pronoun. Use of <i>suus</i> . . . . .	63
XXXI. <b>Third Declension: Adjectives</b> . . . . .	65
XXXII. <b>Participles. Declension of Participles.</b> Future Active Participle and Gerundive with <i>sum</i> . <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs.</i> Agreement of Participle. Translation of Participles . . . . .	67
XXXIII. <b>Fourth Declension.</b> Gender . . . . .	70
THE SECOND PUNIC WAR . . . . .	72
XXXIV. <b>Fifth Declension.</b> Case-Endings. Gender. Compound Verbs. <i>Dative with Compound Verbs</i> . . . . .	74
XXXV. <b>Vocative Case.</b> Review of Case-Endings. Position of Vocative . . . . .	77

CONTENTS

xiii

LESSON		PAGE
XXXVI.	<b>Locative Case.</b> <i>Place Where. Place to Which. Place from Which</i> . . . . .	79
XXXVII.	<b>Present Subjunctive Active.</b> <i>Clauses of Purpose</i> . . . . .	81
XXXVIII.	<b>Present Subjunctive Passive.</b> <i>Relative Clauses of Purpose. Substantive Clauses of Volition</i> . . . . .	83
	HANNIBAL'S OATH . . . . .	85
XXXIX.	<b>Past Subjunctive Active.</b> <i>Use of Subjunctive Tenses</i> . . . . .	87
XL.	<b>Past Subjunctive Passive.</b> <i>Clauses of Result. Relative Clauses of Result</i> . . . . .	89
XLI.	<b>Present and Past Subjunctive of sum.</b> <i>Substantive Clauses of Result</i> . . . . .	91
XLII.	<b>Pronominal Adjectives.</b> <i>Descriptive Relative Clauses</i> . . . . .	93
XLIII.	<b>Regular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of the Comparative. Declension of the Superlative.</b> Absolute Comparative and Superlative. <i>Dative of Purpose or Tendency. Double Dative Construction</i> . . . . .	95
	HANNIBAL IN THE SECOND PUNIC WAR . . . . .	97
XLIV.	<b>Superlative in rimus. Superlative in limus.</b> <i>Ablative of Comparison</i> . . . . .	99
XLV.	<b>Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of plūs.</b> <i>Ablative of Measure of Difference</i> . . . . .	101
XLVI.	<b>Regular Comparison of Adverbs. Irregular Adverbs.</b> <i>Ablative of Manner</i> . . . . .	103
XLVII.	<b>Perfect Subjunctive.</b> <i>Indirect Questions</i> . . . . .	106
	THE LAST YEARS OF HANNIBAL . . . . .	108
XLVIII.	<b>Past Perfect Subjunctive.</b> <i>Harmony of Tenses</i> . . . . .	109
XLIX.	<b>Cardinal Numerals. Declension of Cardinal Numerals.</b> Use of Cardinal Numerals. <i>Accusative of Extent or Duration</i> . . . . .	112
L.	<b>Ordinal Numerals.</b> <i>Ablative of Time</i> . . . . .	114
LI.	<b>Present Imperative.</b> Personal Endings. Irregular Forms	116
LII.	<b>Indefinite Pronouns.</b> Use of <i>quis</i> and <i>quisquam</i> . <i>Review of Ablative Constructions</i> . . . . .	118
	SCIPIO, MARIUS, SULLA . . . . .	119
LIII.	<b>Verb-Endings.</b> Synopsis of Verbs . . . . .	121
LIV.	<b>Present Infinitive Passive.</b> <i>Indirect Statements</i> . . . . .	123
LV.	<b>Perfect and Future Infinitives.</b> <i>Use of Infinitive Tenses. Quam with Superlative</i> . . . . .	125

LESSON	PAGE
LVI. <b>Deponent Verbs</b> . . . . .	128
LVII. <b>Semi-Deponent Verbs.</b> <i>Ablative with Certain Deponents</i> . . . . .	130
THE PLOT OF ORGETORIX . . . . .	131
LVIII. <b>The Irregular Verbs <i>possum</i> and <i>prōsum</i>.</b> <i>Indirect Subordinate Clauses</i> . . . . .	133
LIX. <i>Ablative Absolute</i> . . . . .	135
LX. <b>The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i></b> . . . . .	137
CAESAR'S ARRIVAL IN GAUL . . . . .	138
LXI. <i>Causal and Adversative cum-Clauses</i> . . . . .	140
LXII. <b>The Irregular Verb <i>ed</i>.</b> <i>Cum-Clauses of Situation</i> . . . . .	141
LXIII. <b>The Irregular Verbs <i>volō</i>, <i>nōlō</i>, <i>mālō</i>.</b> <i>Quō-Clauses of Purpose</i> . . . . .	143
THE BEGINNING OF THE HELVETIAN WAR . . . . .	144
LXIV. <i>Review of Subjunctive Constructions</i> . . . . .	146
LXV. <b>The Irregular Verb <i>fiō</i>.</b> <i>Dative of Possession</i> . . . . .	148
LXVI. Active Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	149
LXVII. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. <i>Dative of Agent</i> . . . . .	151
BATTLE AND PARLEY . . . . .	152
LXVIII. <b>Gerund.</b> <i>Use of Gerund and Gerundive</i> . . . . .	154
LXIX. <b>Supine.</b> <i>Use of Supine in <i>um</i>. Use of Supine in <i>u</i>. Review of Expressions of Purpose</i> . . . . .	157
LXX. <i>Conditional Complexes</i> . . . . .	159
THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS . . . . .	160
LXXI. <i>Future Conditional Complexes</i> . . . . .	162
LXXII. <i>Present and Past Conditional Complexes. Summary of Conditional Complexes</i> . . . . .	164
THE DEFEAT AND SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS . . . . .	166
CONSPECTUS OF INFLECTIONS . . . . .	168
RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	214
POSITION OF WORDS . . . . .	218
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	221
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	239
INDEX . . . . .	257

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

MAP ( <i>colored</i> ) . . . . .	<i>Front cover</i>
Showing places mentioned in this book. . . . .	
ROMAN BOY . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Head in the British Museum, London, probably representing Octavianus (Augustus).	
	PAGE
ROMAN INSCRIPTION . . . . .	5
Record of the triumph of Duilius, from the <i>Acta Triumphorum</i> . <i>C. Duilius M. f(ilius) M. n(epos) co(n)s(ul) primus an(no) CDXCIII navalem (triumphum) de Sicul(is) et classe Poenica egit k(alendis) interkalar(ibus)</i> .	
NUMA . . . . .	16
Roman coin.	
ROMAN GIRL . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 28
Head in the Museo delle Terme, Rome.	
ROMULUS . . . . .	41
Roman coin.	
ROMAN JAVELINS . . . . .	47
Reconstructed.	
BRUTUS . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 49
Bronze bust in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.	
ROMAN SWORD . . . . .	52
Found in the Rhine. The dotted lines indicate a reconstruction of the hilt.	
ROMAN STANDARDS . . . . .	56
Roman coin.	
SCIPIO . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 74
Bust in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.	
ANTIOCHUS . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 86
Head in the Louvre, Paris.	
HANNIBAL'S ELEPHANT AND DRIVER . . . . .	101
Etruscan coin, probably representing the only elephant that Hannibal had when he reached Etruria.	

	PAGE
HELMET FROM CANNAE . . . . .	115
Found on the battle-field.	
ROMAN ROAD . . . . .	117
The <i>Via Appia</i> , near Ariccia.	
SULLA . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 120
Head in the Vatican, Rome.	
CAESAR . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 139
Statue in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome.	
GALLIC TRUMPETS AND SHIELDS . . . . .	150
Roman coin. The issuer had served under Caesar in Gaul.	
MEMORIAL OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL . . . . .	154
Roman coin, representing perhaps Pallor and Pavor, or a personification of Gaul and a Gaul	
ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 161
Relief from the Column of Trajan.	
SURRENDER OF BARBARIANS TO ROMAN GENERAL . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 167
Relief from the Column of Trajan.	

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN



# AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

## LESSON I

1. **Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. The letter *i* is used for both a vowel and a consonant sound.

2.

### Sounds

#### VOWELS

ā as in *father*.

ē as in *obey*.

ī as in *machine*.

ō as in *tone*.

ū as in *rule*.

a as in *sofa*.

e as in *pet*.

i as in *it*.

o as in *melody*.

u as in *put*.

#### DIPHTHONGS

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.

au like *ou* in *house*.

oe like *oi* in *boil*.

#### CONSONANTS

b before s or t has the sound of *p*.

c always as in *can*, never as in *cell*.

g always as in *get*, never as in *gem*.

i<sup>1</sup> like *y* in *yes*.

qu as in *queen*.

s always as in *this*, never as in *is*.

t always as in *text*, never as in *negotiation*.

v like *w* in *wit*.

x always as in *exercise*, never as in *exert*.

The other consonants are pronounced as in English.

---

<sup>1</sup> *i* is usually a consonant when it stands at the beginning of a word with a vowel following it, and when it stands between vowels within a word.

**3. Doubled Consonants.** — When a consonant is doubled, it should be distinctly pronounced twice: **mit-tō**. Compare English *set-to* with *setting*.

**4. Quantity of Vowels.** — In this book all long vowels are marked, and vowels not marked are short. The quantity of the vowels in a particular word must in most cases be learned with the word, but there are some general rules:—

1. A vowel is long before **nf** or **ns**: **in-fert**, **frōns**, **mōns**.
2. A vowel is regularly short before **nd**, **nt**, another vowel, or **h**: **fron-dis**, **mon-tis**, **de-a**, **ni-hil**.

### 5. Exercise in Pronunciation

1. **vīs**, **vir**. 2. **aes**, **aut**. 3. **sī**, **is**, **is**. 4. **dās**, **dat**. 5. **quī**, **quae**. 6. **nōn**, **nox**. 7. **sub**, **plēbs**. 8. **dēs**, **det**. 9. **iam**, **gēns**. 10. **mē**, **tot**. 11. **tū**, **tum**. 12. **dā**, **dē**, **dī**, **dō**. 13. **at**, **et**, **it**, **ut**. 14. **dēns**, **urbs**.

### 6. Syllables

1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **de-a**, **de-ae**.

2. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the vowel following it: **a-mat**, **a-qua**.<sup>1</sup>

3. When there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the vowel before it: **mit-tō**, **cas-tra**, **at-que**.

4. When, however, the first consonant is a mute<sup>2</sup> and the second is **l** or **r**, both are regularly pronounced with the vowel following them: **a-gri**.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that **u** is not a vowel when it follows **q**, and that **qu** counts as a single consonant.

<sup>2</sup> The mutes are **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g**.

## 7. Quantity of Syllables

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *rē-gēs*, *cau-sae*.

2. A syllable is long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x**<sup>1</sup>; but the vowel is pronounced short: *mit-tunt*, *u-xor*.

3. When, however, the first consonant is a mute and the second is **l** or **r**, the syllable is regularly short: *a-grī*.

4. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by another vowel or by a single consonant: *de-a*, *a-mat*, *a-qua*.

## 8. Accent

1. In words of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: *ā'-ra*, *a'-mō*.

2. In words of three or more syllables the accent falls on the penult,<sup>2</sup> if this is long; but if the penult is short, the accent falls on the antepenult: *a-mā'-bam*, *a-mā'-bi-tis*, *a-mā-vis'-tis*.

## 9. Exercise in Pronunciation

1. agger, sagitta. 2. ratiō, item. 3. nautae, paucitās, coepi. 4. ageris, agēris. 5. lātē, ire, valē, mare. 6. filiis, filiārum. 7. absum, subter. 8. exercitus, exercitūs, exercitibus. 9. eques, equitēs, equitibus. 10. iūstitia, iūstitiā. 11. arbitror, alacris, fenestra. 12. amābāmus, amābimus. 13. amāvī, amāvimus, amāvisti. 14. iāciō. 15. nullus, appropinquō. 16. insidiae, appropinquāverātis, appropinquāveritis. 17. finēs, eat. 18. rēgnat, rēgnatque.

<sup>1</sup> This is because **x** is a double consonant, equivalent to *cs*. So *uxor* is pronounced *uc sor*.

<sup>2</sup> The penult is the syllable next to the last, and the antepenult is the syllable before the penult.

## LESSON II

## 10. Present Indicative Active, First Conjugation

## SINGULAR

- FIRST PERSON: amō, *I love, am loving, do love.*  
 SECOND PERSON: amās, *you love, are loving, do love.*  
 THIRD PERSON: amat, *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love.*

## PLURAL

- FIRST PERSON: amāmus, *we love, are loving, do love.*  
 SECOND PERSON: amātis, *you love, are loving, do love.*  
 THIRD PERSON: amant, *they love, are loving, do love.*

11. **Personal Endings.** — From the forms given above may be made a table of endings which denote person and number in verbs: —

ō, <i>I.</i>	mus, <i>we.</i>
s, <i>you (singular).</i>	tis, <i>you (plural).</i>
t, <i>he, she, or it.</i>	nt, <i>they.</i>

## 12. Number in Nouns

## SINGULAR

- sagitta, *an arrow, the arrow.*  
 fēmina, *a woman, the woman.*

## PLURAL

- sagittae, *arrows, the arrows.*  
 fēminae, *women, the women.*

## 13. Vocabulary

amō, <i>love. amateur.</i> <sup>1</sup>	superō, <i>excel; also conquer. insuperable.</i>
appropinquō, <i>approach. propinquity.</i>	vocō, <i>call. vocation.</i>
dēmigrō, <i>move away, remove. migration.</i>	fēmina, <i>woman. feminine.</i>
parō, <i>prepare.</i>	filia, <i>daughter. filial.</i>
properō, <i>hasten.</i>	nauta, <i>sailor. nautical.</i>
pugnō, <i>fight. pugnacious.</i>	Numa, <i>Numa, second king of Rome.</i>
rēgnō, <i>reign.</i>	sagitta, <i>arrow.</i>
	et, <i>conjunction, and.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Words in this type are etymologically related to the Latin words.

## Exercises

14. Inflect in the present indicative active all the verbs in the vocabulary.

Form the plural of *filia* and of *nauta*.

15. 1. *dēmigrant, properat.* 2. *parās, appropinquātis.*  
 3. *rēgnās, pugnānt.* 4. *parātis, pugnāmus.* 5. *rēgnō, vocās.*  
 6. *Fēmina vocat,<sup>1</sup> filiae<sup>2</sup> properant.* 7. *Sagittae superant.*  
 8. *Numa dēmigrat.* 9. *Fēminae appropinquant.* 10. *Nauta pugnāt et superat.* 11. *Numa rēgnat.* 12. *Fēmina et filia properant.*

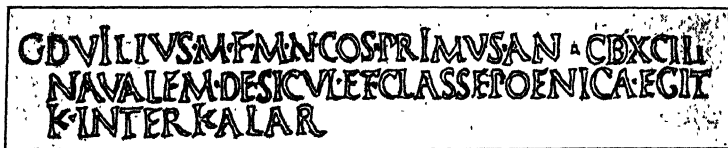
16. **Agreement of Verb.** — From an examination of the Latin sentences discover the rule for the agreement of the verb with its subject.

17. 1. I-call, he-reigns. 2. you-fight, you-are-conquering.  
 3. we-hasten, he-is-preparing. 4. he-fights, you-reign.  
 5. you-are-calling, they-approach. 6. they-are-preparing,  
 he-moves-away. 7. they-call, they-do-call. 8. The-sailors  
 are-hastening. 9. The-woman and her<sup>3</sup> daughter are-approaching.  
 10. The-sailors move-away. 11. The-arrows excel.  
 12. The-arrow excels.

<sup>1</sup> A personal pronoun is not to be used in translating a verb which has its subject expressed: *fēmina vocat, the woman calls, not the woman she calls.*

<sup>2</sup> *her daughters.* Latin does not express the possessive adjectives when they are not required for clearness.

<sup>3</sup> This word need not be put into Latin.



ROMAN INSCRIPTION

## LESSON III

18. **Present Indicative Active.** — Learn the present indicative active of **moneō**, *advise*; **regō**, *guide*; **audiō**, *hear* (section 490).

19. **Present Stem.** — The present stem<sup>1</sup> ends in **ā** in the first conjugation, **ē** in the second, and **i** in the fourth: **amā-**, **monē-**, **audī-**. Before which of the personal endings is the final vowel of the stem shortened? Notice that it does not appear in the first person singular of the first conjugation, and that the third person plural of the fourth conjugation is formed irregularly (not **audint**, but **audiunt**).

In the third conjugation the final vowel of the present stem varies. Notice that it does not appear in the first person singular (compare the first conjugation), is **u** before **nt**, and **i** elsewhere.

## 20. Present Infinitive Active

<b>amāre</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>regere</b>	<b>audire</b>
<i>to love</i>	<i>to advise</i>	<i>to guide</i>	<i>to hear</i>

21. **Infinitive Ending.** — The ending of the present infinitive active is **re**.

The present infinitive active, or the final vowel of the stem with the infinitive ending, is given to show to which of the four conjugations a verb belongs: —

I	II	III	IV
<b>āre</b>	<b>ēre</b>	<b>ere</b>	<b>īre</b>

Notice that in the infinitive of the third conjugation the final vowel of the stem is **e**.

---

<sup>1</sup> By stem is meant that part of a word to which the endings are added.

## 22.

## Vocabulary

audiō, -īre, <i>hear.</i> <i>audible.</i>	conveniō, -īre, <i>come together, assemble.</i>
dēbeō, -ēre, <i>owe, ought.</i> <i>debt.</i>	<i>convention.</i>
maneō, -ēre, <i>stay, remain.</i> <i>permanent.</i>	videō, -ēre, <i>see.</i> <i>visible.</i>
mittō, -ere, <i>send.</i> <i>mission.</i>	amicitia, <i>friendship.</i> [amō]. <sup>1</sup>
moneō, -ēre, <i>advise, warn.</i> <i>monitor.</i>	dea, <i>goddess.</i> <i>deity.</i>
regō, -ere, <i>guide, direct.</i> <i>regent.</i>	nōn, <i>adverb, not.</i> <i>nonsense.</i>
veniō, -īre, <i>come.</i> <i>advent.</i>	sed, <i>conj., but.</i>

## Exercises

23. Inflect *videō*, *mittō*, and *veniō* in the present indicative active.

24. 1. mittitis, monētis. 2. venītis, superātis. 3. mittunt, mittit. 4. convenīmus, manent. 5. monent, regunt. 6. Dea monet. 7. Dēbēs vidēre et audire. 8. Fēminae dēmigrāre properant. 9. Nautae conveniunt et pugnāre parant. 10. Nōn manēre dēbēmus, sed properāre. 11. Fēmina vocat, filiae venire properant. 12. Dea audit et venit.

25. **Order of Words.**—The position of words in a Latin sentence is largely determined by emphasis. Notice, however, that the subject normally stands first in the sentence and the verb last.

26. 1. The women are approaching. 2. Friendship remains. 3. Numa comes, but does<sup>2</sup> not stay. 4. You ought to assemble. 5. The sailors are coming together. 6. Numa is reigning. 7. We are preparing to fight. 8. A goddess guides. 9. A sailor calls, but we do not hear. 10. He sends, but his daughters do not come.

<sup>1</sup> Latin words in brackets are etymologically related to the other Latin words with which they are given.

<sup>2</sup> *does stay* is one word in Latin.

## LESSON IV

## 27. First Declension

CASES	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE :	sagitta, <i>an arrow, the arrow.</i>	a
GENITIVE :	sagittae, <i>of an arrow, the arrow.</i>	ae
DATIVE :	sagittae, <i>to or for an arrow, the arrow.</i>	ae
ACCUSATIVE :	sagittam, <i>an arrow, the arrow.</i>	am
ABLATIVE :	sagittā, <i>by or with<sup>1</sup> an arrow, the arrow.</i>	ā
PLURAL		
NOMINATIVE :	sagittae, <i>arrows, the arrows.</i>	ae
GENITIVE :	sagittārum, <i>of arrows, the arrows.</i>	ārum
DATIVE :	sagittis, <i>to or for arrows, the arrows.</i>	is
ACCUSATIVE :	sagittās, <i>arrows, the arrows.</i>	ās
ABLATIVE :	sagittis, <i>by or with arrows, the arrows.</i>	is

## 28. Vocabulary

aqua, <i>water.</i> aquatic.	petō, -ere, <i>seek, beg.</i> petition.
Italia, <i>Italy.</i>	relinquō, -ere, <i>leave, abandon.</i>
patria, <i>fatherland, country.</i> expatriate.	relic.
pugna, <i>battle, fight.</i> [pugnō].	in, preposition, followed by the abl. case, <i>in, on.</i>
silva, <i>wood, forest.</i> sylvan.	-ne, enclitic, <sup>2</sup> used to denote a question.
via, <i>road, way.</i> deviate.	saepe, adverb, <i>often, frequently.</i>
expectō, -āre, <i>wait for, await.</i>	

## Exercises

29. Decline nauta, fēmina, silva.

30. 1. Fēmina nautam vocat. 2. Numa in silvā manet et deam expectat. 3. Dea Numam saepe monet. 4. Numa

<sup>1</sup> The ablative has other meanings, which will be given in later lessons.

<sup>2</sup> Enclitics are little words that cannot stand alone, but are joined to the word they follow.

patriam regit. 5. Fēmina aquam in silvā petit. 6. Fēmina filiam exspectat, sed filia nōn venit. 7. Vidēsne<sup>1</sup> aquam in silvā? 8. Viam relinquō et aquam videō. 9. Nautaene appropinquant? 10. Nautae appropinquant et pugnāre parant. 11. Conveniunt et pugnam exspectant. 12. Nautaene aquam amant? 13. Nautae aquam amant. 14. Aquamne (*see section 34 below*) nautae amant? 15. Aquam nautae amant. 16. Amantne nautae aquam? 17. Nōn amant nautae aquam.

**31. Subject.** — What case is used in the sentences to denote the subject?

**32. Direct Object.** — Sentences 1–8 and 11–17 contain transitive verbs and their direct objects. Find the object in each sentence, and notice its case.

**33. Position of Adverb.** — An adverb normally stands just before the word it modifies, as in sentences 3, 6, 17.

**34. Position of *-ne*.** — The enclitic *-ne* is usually joined to the first word in the question, since it naturally goes with the word upon which the question turns, and this is the emphatic word. Sentences 12, 14, and 16 must be translated by the same English sentence, but the effect of the difference in the order of the Latin words can be brought out in oral translation by stressing the emphatic word.

**35.** 1. The woman sends her daughter frequently. 2. You see the arrows in the road. 3. They move away and leave their country. 4. Do they love their country? 5. Ought we to seek friendship? 6. A sailor loves the water. 7. Numa is reigning in Italy. 8. The woman excels her daughter. 9. They hear, and hasten to leave the arrows.

---

<sup>1</sup> *-ne* cannot be translated by any single word. In English a question is denoted by the order of the words: *vidēsne?* *do you see?* *videō,* *I do see.*

## LESSON V

## 36. Present Indicative Passive, First Conjugation

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON: amor, *I am (being) loved.*SECOND PERSON: amāris or amāre, *you are (being) loved.*THIRD PERSON: amātur, *he (she, it) is (being) loved.*

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON: amāmur, *we are (being) loved.*SECOND PERSON: amāminī, *you are (being) loved.*THIRD PERSON: amantur, *they are (being) loved.*

37. **Personal Endings.** — How do the active and the passive endings differ in the third person? In the first person plural? How is the first person singular passive formed from the first person singular active? Before which of the passive endings is the final vowel of the stem shortened?

r, *I.*ris or re, *you (singular).*tur, *he, she, or it.*mur, *we.*minī, *you (plural).*ntur, *they.*

## 38.

## Vocabulary

dēfendō, -ere, *defend.*dēleō, -ēre, *destroy. indelible.*servō, -āre, *save, preserve.*temptō, -āre, *try, tempt.*fortūna, *fortune.*īnsula, *island. insular.*lupa, *wolf.*porta, *gate (of a city). portal.*Rōma, *Rome.*Trōia, *Troy, a famous ancient city.*victōria, *victory.*ab or ā,<sup>1</sup> prep. with abl., *by.*ad, prep. with acc., *to. advent.*

## Exercises

39. Inflect servō, expectō, and superō in the present indicative passive.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ā is not used before words beginning with a vowel or h.

40. 1. Fortūna insulam servat. 2. Fēmina filiam ad portam mittit. 3. Victōriam, nōn amicitiam petunt. 4. Veniuntne ad portās? 5. Rōmam dēlent et relinquunt. 6. Patriam amāre et dēfendere dēbētis. 7. Fortūnam saepe temptāre nōn dēbēmus. 8. Nautae in insulā manent. 9. Dea Rōmam servat. 10. Rōma ā deā servātur. 11. Fēmina nautam vocat. 12. Nauta ā fēminā vocātur. 13. Viam in silvā petimus. 14. Fēmina ā filiā amātur.

41. **Ablative of Agent.** — Examine sentences 10, 12, and 14, and discover how the person by whom a thing is done is denoted in Latin when the verb is passive.

In the change to the passive voice what becomes of the subject of the active verb? What becomes of the object?

42. 1. The goddess is awaited by Numa, but she does not come. 2. The sailors assemble and leave Troy. 3. The woman is called to the gate by her daughter. 4. Water destroys the road. 5. The women hear and see a wolf on the island. 6. You are defending your country in battle. 7. Are we being called by the sailors? 8. You are loved by your daughter. 9. I warn and guide Numa.

## LESSON VI

43. **Present Indicative Passive.** — Learn the present indicative passive of *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* (section 490).

Notice that in the second person singular of the third conjugation the final vowel of the stem is not *i*, as in the active, but *e*.

### Exercises

44. 1. vocor, audiō. 2. temptant, superantur. 3. audiuntur, venit. 4. dēlentur, dēfenditis. 5. vocāminī, convenitis. 6. mittitur, petunt. 7. vidēmur, venis. 8. servāris,

servāmini. 9. relinquunt, relinquuntur. 10. exspectāmus, exspectāmur. 11. vidēris, videor. 12. audīmus, parāmus. 13. manēs, dēmigrat.

45. 1. you are being left, we are sent. 2. you are sending, you are loved. 3. they are approaching, it is being fought. 4. we move away, we do hasten. 5. she is seen, it is seen. 6. he reigns, he is reigning. 7. they assemble, they are warned. 8. I am heard, I am warned. 9. I remain, I am conquering. 10. he guides, it is guided.

## 46.

## Vocabulary

dūcō, -ere, *lead. aqueduct.*

habēō, -ēre, *have. habit.*

impediō, -ire, *check, impede.*

incendō, -ere, *fire, burn. incendiary.*

mūniō, -ire, *fortify. ammunition.*

oppugnō, -āre, *attack, besiege.*

[pugnō].

reperiō, -ire, *find. repertory.*

cōpia, *abundance; in plural, forces, troops. copious.*

fāma, *report, fame.*

fuga, *flight. fugitive.*

grātia, *favor, influence. gracious.*

Porsena, *Porsena, an enemy of Rome.*

Scaevola, *Scaevola, a Roman hero.*

celeriter, *adv., quickly. celerity.*

## Exercises

47. Inflect **videō**, **relinquō**, and **impediō** in the present indicative passive.

48. 1. Cōpiās ad Italiam celeriter dūcimus. 2. Lupaene in viā saepe videntur? 3. Rōma ā Porsenā oppugnātur, sed ā Scaevolā dēfenditur. 4. Cōpie Porsenae<sup>1</sup> in silvā relinquuntur. 5. Filiae fēminae ā nautā servantur. 6. Rōma

---

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, of *Porsena* or *Porsena's*. Notice that the genitive may often be translated by the English genitive instead of a prepositional phrase.

celeriter mūnītur. 7. Portās Rōmae incendere temptant.  
 8. Aqua in silvis insulae reperitur. 9. Grātia deārum ā  
 fēminīs saepe petitur. 10. Silvae fugam cōpiārum impedi-  
 unt. 11. Cōpiam sagittārum habētis.

49. 1. You ought to seek victory and fame. 2. Are you waiting for the favor of Numa? 3. Troy is fired and destroyed. 4. She has the sailor's arrow. 5. He has the sailors' arrows. 6. The report comes to Porsena. 7. Scaevola's country is being attacked by Porsena. 8. Fortune directs battles.

## LESSON VII

50. **Past Indicative Active.** — Learn the past indicative active of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* (sections 489, 490).

51. **Personal Endings.** — Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the present tense, except that the first person singular has *m* instead of *ō*.

52. **Tense-Sign.** — Notice that the past indicative is made up of the present stem, the tense-sign *bā*, and the personal endings. The final vowel of the stem is lengthened to *ē* in the third conjugation, and in the fourth *i* becomes *iē*. All conjugations except the first have then *ē* before the tense-sign *bā*. Before which of the personal endings is the long vowel of the tense-sign shortened?

53. **Use of the Past.** — The past represents an action as going on at some past time: *monēbam*, *I was advising*, *I advised*, or *I did advise*.

## 54.

## Vocabulary

dēmōnstrō, -āre, <i>point out, show.</i>	vīta, <i>life. vital.</i>
demonstrative.	dē, prep. with abl., <i>about, concerning.</i>
dō, -are, <sup>1</sup> <i>give. dative.</i>	per, prep. with acc., <i>through. permanent.</i>
nūntiō, <sup>2</sup> -āre, <i>announce, report.</i>	tum, adv., <i>at that time, then.</i>
captīva, <i>captive, prisoner.</i>	ubi, adv., <i>where.</i>
pecūnia, <i>money. pecuniary.</i>	
praeda, <i>booty, plunder. depredation.</i>	
terra, <i>earth, land. subterranean.</i>	

## Exercises

55. Inflect in the past indicative active nūntiō, dēleō, dūcō, and reperiō.

56. 1. Italiam dēfendere parābant. 2. Captivīs<sup>3</sup> pecūniam dant. 3. Pecūnia captivīs datur. 4. Trōia incenditur et praeda cōpiis datur. 5. Pugna Porsenae<sup>4</sup> celeriter nūntiātur. 6. Ubi fēmina pecūniam reperiēbat? 7. In insulā pecūniam reperiēbat. 8. Vīta Scaevolae ā Porsenā servātur. 9. Nautīs terram dēmōnstrābāmus. 10. Ubi lupam vidēbātis? 11. Tum captivās ad Porsenam mittēbāmus. 12. Fāma dē victōriā fugam cōpiārum impediēbat.

57. **Indirect Object.** — The use of the dative shown in the sentences above is called the dative of the indirect object. Notice that the dative of the indirect object is used with transitive verbs, with an accusative of the direct object when the verb is active.

58. **Position of the Objects.** — The indirect object normally stands before the direct object, as in sentences 2 and 9 above.

<sup>1</sup> The *a* of *dō* is regularly short, but long in *dās*.

<sup>2</sup> Notice that this verb, though it ends in *iō*, is not of the fourth conjugation.

<sup>3</sup> Dative, *to the captives*.

<sup>4</sup> Dative.

59. 1. We were not preparing to fortify the gates. 2. We gave our money to the fatherland. 3. They left the booty in the road. 4. Money is given to the troops by Porsena. 5. Did you hear often about the fortunes of your daughter? 6. You were showing the arrows to a woman. 7. He is led by the goddess through the forests to<sup>1</sup> the gates of Rome. 8. Porsena was then besieging Rome. 9. They try the road through the forest and are destroyed. 10. At that time I had influence in Italy.

## LESSON VIII

60. **Past Indicative Passive.** — Inflect *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* in the past indicative passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 489, 490). Remember that a long vowel is not shortened before the passive ending for the third person singular.

## 61.

## Vocabulary

<i>augeō</i> , -ēre, <i>increase</i> . <i>auction</i> .	<i>insidiae</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>ambush, treachery</i> . <i>insidious</i> .
<i>expellō</i> , -ere, <i>drive out, expel</i> .	
<i>pervenīō</i> , -ire, <i>arrive, come</i> . [ <i>per</i> + <i>veniō</i> ].	<i>ex</i> or <i>ē</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>prep. with abl., out of, from</i> .
<i>vulnerō</i> , -āre, <i>wound</i> . <i>vulnerable</i> .	<i>ibi</i> , <i>adv., in that place, there</i> .
<i>fossa</i> , <i>ditch, trench</i> .	<i>sic</i> , <i>adv., in this way, so, thus</i> .

## Exercises

62. Inflect in the past indicative passive *vulnerō*, *videō*, *expellō*, and *impediō*.

<sup>1</sup> When used of motion, *to* is not to be rendered by the dative, but by *ad* with the accusative.

<sup>2</sup> This is nom. pl. The singular is not used. Decline it *insidiae*, *insidiarum*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> *Ē* is not used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*.

63. 1. Lupam sagittā vulnerat. 2. Fuga lupae aquā impediēbatur. 3. Ibi sagittis pugnābant. 4. Cōpiae ex Italiā conveniēbant. 5. Vitam fugā servābam. 6. Ubi praedam reperiēbātis? 7. Via Porsenae ā captivā dēmōnstrātur. 8. Tum cōpiās per silvās celeriter dūcit. 9. Cōpiās augēmus et Rōmam fossā mūnimus. 10. Victōria Numae ā nautā nūntiābatur. 11. Fāma dē victōriā ad Numam pervenit. 12. Trōia oppugnābatur, portae incendēbantur. 13. Trōia per insidiās dēlētur.

64. **Ablative of Means.** — When used as in sentences 1, 2, 3, 5, and 9, the ablative is called the ablative of means.

Notice that the ablative of means differs in several respects from the ablative of agent: —

	DENOTES	LATIN PREPOSITION	ENGLISH PREPOSITION
ABL. OF AGENT :	a person	ab or ā	by
ABL. OF MEANS :	a thing	none	by or with

65. 1. Was the woman's life saved by flight? 2. The flight of the troops was impeded by the trenches. 3. She has the money. 4. At that time you were being expelled from Italy. 5. He is increasing his influence by victories. 6. We did not give the money to the troops. 7. In this way the sailors came to land. 8. The sailor gave the booty to his daughter. 9. The wolf was wounded with an arrow by the sailor. 10. In that place they were preparing an ambush.



NUMA

## LESSON IX

66. Second Declension : Nouns in *us* and *um*

	<b>mūrus</b> <i>wall</i>		<b>bellum</b> <i>war</i>	
		SINGULAR		
		ENDINGS		ENDINGS
NOM.	mūrus	us	bellum	um
GEN.	mūrī	ī	bellī	ī
DAT.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
ACC.	mūrūm	um	bellum	um
ABL.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
		PLURAL		
NOM.	mūrī	ī	bella	a
GEN.	mūrōrum	ōrum	bellōrum	ōrum
DAT.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs
ACC.	mūrōs	ōs	bella	a
ABL.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs

## 67. Gender

1. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except those that denote males.

2. Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** are regularly masculine; those ending in **um** are neuter.

## 68. Case-Endings

1. Notice that the nominative and the accusative singular of **bellum** have the same ending, and likewise the nominative and the accusative plural; and that the ending in the plural is **a**. This is true of all neuter nouns.

2. In masculine and feminine nouns the ending of the accusative singular is always a short vowel and **m**; that of the accusative plural is always a long vowel and **s**.

## 69.

## Vocabulary

amicus, *friend*. [amicitia].bellum, *war*. belligerent.castra,<sup>1</sup> *camp*.Ēgeria, *Egeria*, a goddess.Labiēnus, *Labiennus*, a Roman officer.lēgātus, *ambassador*; also *lieutenant*. legation.mūrus, *wall*. mural.oppidum, *town*.periculum, *danger*, *peril*.· pilum, *javelin*.Rōmānī (pl.), *the Romans*.Rōmulus, *Romulus*, founder and first king of Rome.· tēlum, *missile*, *weapon*.· condō, -ere, *found*, *build*.· gerō, -ere, *carry on*, *wage*. belligerent.terreō, -ēre, *frighten*, *terrify*.est, *he (she, it) is*.sunt, *they are*.

## Exercises

## 70. Decline fossa, lēgātus, and oppidum.

71. 1. Labiēnum lēgātum nōn vulnerant. 2. Labiēnus lēgātus nōn vulnerātur. 3. Tēla sunt sagittae. 4. Ibi amici Rōmuli pilis vulnerābantur. 5. Porsena cōpiās ad silvam celeriter dūcit et Rōmānōs exspectat. 6. Sic periculum insidiārum augētur. 7. Periculum Rōmānōs nōn terret. 8. Tum Rōmānī Italiam bellō<sup>2</sup> superābant. 9. Lēgātī dē amicitīā ad Rōmānōs ex castris mittēbantur. 10. Oppidum Trōiam vocant. 11. Oppidum Trōia vocātur. 12. Rōma ā Rōmulō condēbātur. 13. Labiēnō lēgātō pecūniam dabant.

72. Agreement of Noun. — What is the case of lēgātum in sentence 1? lēgātus in 2? sagittae in 3? Trōiam in 10? Trōia in 11? lēgātō in 13? Notice that each of these nouns belongs to some other noun

<sup>1</sup> This is neuter nom. pl. of the second declension, not nom. sing. of the first. Decline it castra, castrōrum, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Literally *with war*, but English usage requires *in war*. In translating, first make sure that you know the literal meaning of the Latin words, and then express the idea in the best English you can.

denoting the same person or thing, and that it stands in the same case as that other noun.

73. 1. Egeria is a goddess. 2. The goddess Egeria warns Numa. 3. You called Egeria a goddess. 4. Where is<sup>1</sup> the camp? 5. The battle is reported to the lieutenant. 6. He shows the booty to his friends. 7. The woman's daughter is a captive. 8. The Romans were fortifying the town with a wall and a ditch. 9. Numa did not wage war. 10. They come through the forests to the town and drive out the Romans. 11. Rome is in the land of<sup>2</sup> Italy. 12. Porsena's life is in danger. 13. Porsena was not often frightened.

## LESSON X

### 74. First and Second Declensions : Adjectives in *us, a, um*

Learn the declension of **bonus**, *good* (section 464).

Notice that the masculine of **bonus** is declined like **mūrus**, the feminine like **sagitta**, the neuter like **bellum**.

### 75. Second Declension : Nouns in *ius* and *ium*

Learn the declension of **filius**, *son*, and **cōnsilium**, *plan* (section 458).

Notice that these nouns have **i**, not **ii**, in the genitive singular.

76. **Exception to Rule for Accent.**— In the genitive singular of nouns in **ius** and **ium** the accent falls on the penult, even when this is short : **cōn-si'-li**.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the subject is *camp*, and in writing the Latin verb be careful to follow the rule for agreement of verb with subject.

<sup>2</sup> In Latin *the land Italy*, not *the land of Italy*.

## 77.

## Vocabulary

**bonus**, *good*.

**longus**, *long*.

**magnus**, *large, great. magnitude.*

**multus**, *much*; in pl., *many. multitude.*

**Alba Longa**, *Alba Longa*, an ancient town of Italy.

**annus**, *year. annual.*

**Ascanius**, *Ascanius*, founder of Alba Longa.

**cōnsilium**, *plan*; also *discretion.*

**filius**, *son*. [*filia*].

**nūntius**, *messenger*; also *news*. [*nūntiō*].

**praesidium**, *guard, garrison.*

**proelium**, *battle, engagement.*

**rēgnum**, *reign, throne*. [*rēgnō*].

**Trōiāni** (pl.), *the Trojans*, the people of Troy.

**obtineō**, *-ēre, hold, possess. tenant.*

**posteā**, *adv., afterward. posterity.*

## Exercises

78. Decline **praesidium**, **nūntius**, and **magnus**.

79. 1. Multi Trōiāni ad Italiam perveniunt. 2. Ibi oppidum condunt et magnās cōpiās superant. 3. Posteā rēgnum ab Ascaniō obtinēbātur. 4. Ascanius Trōiānis multa et<sup>1</sup> bona cōnsilia dēmōnstrābat. 5. Ascanius Albam Longam, magnum Italiae oppidum, condit. 6. Filii lēgātī pilis vulnerābantur. 7. Nōn longum est tēlum, sed magnum. 8. Castra magnō in periculō sunt. 9. Proelium Rōmānis nūntiātur et praesidium ex oppidō dūcitur. 10. Mūniturne Rōma mūrō et fossā? 11. Multae fēminae grātiā bonae deae petēbant. 12. Amicus Rōmānōrum ā nūntiis vocābar. 13. Oppida multōs per annōs dēfendēbantur.

80. Agreement of Adjective. — Notice that each adjective in the Latin sentences agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies.

---

<sup>1</sup> To be omitted in translating. A conjunction is frequently used to connect **multus** and another adjective which modifies the same noun.

81. Decline together *sagitta bona, m̄rus bonus, c̄nsillium bonum, bonus filius, magna c̄pia, longum pilum*; also *nauta bonus*, noting the gender of *nauta*.

82. **Position of Adjective.** — An adjective may either precede or follow the noun it modifies; a genitive normally follows the noun it modifies. When an adjective and a genitive modify the same noun, the order is often adjective, genitive, modified noun, as in sentence 5 above. When a monosyllabic preposition is used with a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition often stands between the adjective and the noun, as in sentences 8 and 13 above.

83. 1. The weapons of the Trojans are long arrows. 2. Thus war increased the fame of Alba Longa. 3. At that time Ascanius held the throne. 4. We saw the discretion of Ascanius. 5. Ascanius called the town Alba Longa. 6. A large garrison was left in the town of <sup>1</sup>Alba. 7. Por-sena waged many great wars. 8. The lieutenant's forces were driven out from the town through treachery. 9. The news terrifies Romulus.

## LESSON XI

### 84. Future Indicative, First and Second Conjugations

Learn the future indicative, active and passive, of *amō* and *moneō* (sections 489, 490).

85. **Tense-Sign.** — Notice that the tense-sign of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations is *b* followed by a vowel which varies in the same way as the final vowel of the stem in the present of the third conjugation.

---

<sup>1</sup> See section 73, sentence 11.

## 86.

## Vocabulary

dēligō, -ere, choose, select. eligible.  
 arma (neut. pl.), arms.  
 imperium, power, rule. imperial.  
 locus (pl. loca<sup>1</sup>), place, position.  
 local.  
 populus, people, nation. popular.  
 Remus, Remus, brother of Romulus.  
 signum, signal; also standard (military).

amicus,<sup>2</sup> friendly.  
 idōneus, suitable.  
 propinquus, near, neighboring. [ap-  
 propinquō].  
 Rōmānus, Roman.  
 in, prep. with acc., into.<sup>3</sup>  
 sub, prep. with acc. and abl., under.  
 subterranean.

## Exercises

87. Inflect **vulnerō** and **obtineō** in the future indicative active; **servō** and **terreō** in the future indicative passive.<sup>3</sup>

Decline **insidiae**, **castra**, **arma**, and **locus**.

88. 1. Porsena nōn est Rōmānōrum amicus. 2. Bona dea Rōmānis<sup>4</sup> est amica. 3. Postea Trōiāni locum castris<sup>5</sup> idōneum dēligēbant. 4. Oppidum est magnae silvae propinquum. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānis signum proeli<sup>6</sup> celeriter dabit. 6. Magnō ē periculō ā filiō servābitur. 7. Multa tēla tum in castra mittēbantur.<sup>7</sup> 8. Rōmulus et Remus dē imperiō pugnābunt. 9. Rōmulus rēgnum obtinēbit. 10. Bellum ā Rōmulō multōs per annōs gerēbātur. 11. Alba Longa sub imperiō populi Rōmāni<sup>8</sup> est. 12. Alba Longa sub imperium populi Rōmāni venit.

<sup>1</sup> This noun is masculine in the singular, but usually neuter in the plural.

<sup>2</sup> Notice that this word may be either noun or adjective.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that **in** is used with the accusative to denote place to which, with the ablative to denote place where. The use of **sub** is similar.

<sup>4</sup> Dative, not ablative.

<sup>5</sup> Dative, for a camp.

<sup>6</sup> the signal for battle, literally of battle.

<sup>7</sup> With **tēlum** and **pīlum**, **mittō** may be translated *hurl* or *throw*.

<sup>8</sup> When the two words **populus Rōmānus** are used together, they are always written in this order. Notice, too, that they are singular. There was only one *Roman people*.

**89. Dative with Adjectives.** — Observe that the datives in sentences 2, 3, and 4 modify adjectives, and notice carefully what adjectives take the dative.

**90.** 1. The flight of the Roman sailors will terrify the forces. 2. I shall not often call the Roman people to<sup>1</sup> arms. 3. The messenger is in the town. 4. The messenger comes into the town. 5. Porsena fortified the town with a wall and left a garrison there. 6. Ascanius is founding the town of Alba Longa. 7. She is friendly to the Trojans. 8. You will be called a friend of the Roman people. 9. He will show the plan to Labienus, the lieutenant. 10. A place suitable for a camp is chosen by the lieutenant. 11. Is the place near Alba? 12. In the camp of the Romans are many long javelins.

## LESSON XII

### **91. Second Declension: Nouns in *er*, and *vir***

Learn the declension of *puer*, *boy*; *ager*, *field*; and *vir*, *man* (section 458).

Notice that the case-endings are the same as in the declension of nouns in *us*, except that the nominative singular does not have *us*. How does the declension of *ager* differ from that of *puer*?

**92. Gender.** — Nouns of the second declension ending in *er* are masculine.

### **93. First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in *er*, *a*, *um***

Learn the declension of *liber*, *free*, and *integer*, *fresh* (section 464).

---

<sup>1</sup> Use *ad*.

Notice that **integer** differs from **liber** in declension as **ager** from **puer**.

## 94.

## Vocabulary

<b>ager</b> , <i>field</i> ; also <i>territory</i> .	<b>agri-</b>	<b>ripa</b> , <i>bank</i> (of a river).
<b>culture</b> .		<b>vir</b> , <i>man</i> . <b>virile</b> .
<b>animus</b> , <i>mind</i> ; also <i>courage</i> .	<b>mag-</b>	<b>crēber</b> , <i>frequent</i> , <i>numerous</i> .
<b>animus</b> .		<b>integer</b> , <i>unwearied</i> , <i>fresh</i> .
<b>Latīnī</b> (pl.), <i>the Latins</i> , a people of Italy.		<b>liber</b> , <i>free</i> . <b>liberty</b> .
<b>mātrimōnium</b> , <i>marriage</i> .	<b>matri-</b>	<b>miser</b> , <i>wretched</i> , <i>miserable</i> .
<b>monial</b> .		<b>occidō</b> , -ere, <i>kill</i> .
<b>puer</b> , <i>boy</i> ; <b>puerī</b> (pl.), <i>children</i> .		<b>cum</b> , prep. with abl., <i>with</i> . [con-
<b>puerile</b> .		<b>veniō</b> ].
		<b>nam</b> , conj., <i>for</i> .

## Exercises

95. Decline **crēber** (like **integer**), **miser** (like **liber**).

96. 1. Postea cum multis Troianis in Italiam pervenit. 2. Filio Ascani filiam in matrimonium dabo. 3. Aqua miseris pueris Romulum et Remum in ripa relinquēbat. 4. Vir consiliis Romanorum est non amicus. 5. Scaevola Porsenam telo occidere in animo habet. 6. Legatus cum magnis copiis ad oppidum Albam Longam mittitur. 7. Nam crebri nuntii per agrum Romanum veniunt. 8. Sic praesidium ex oppido expellēbatur. 9. Tum signum proeli sub armis expectabatis. 10. Castra in propinquis agris habitis. 11. Locus castris idoneus est. 12. Romani cum Latinis saepe pugnabunt.

97. Ablative of Accompaniment. — Observe the use of the ablative with **cum** in sentences 1, 6, and 12.

98. 1. A free people chooses good men. 2. The miserable Latins are under the rule of the Roman people. 3. Afterward we carried on long wars with the Romans

through many years. 4. Fresh troops are being led into the battle. 5. The lieutenant was sent to the camp with large forces. 6. The wretched women will remain in the town with the children. 7. I shall hold the throne with arms. 8. Ascanius will be called a good man.

### LESSON XIII

#### 99. Future Indicative, Third and Fourth Conjugations

Learn the future indicative, active and passive, of *regō* and *audiō* (section 490).

100. **Tense-Sign.** — Notice that the tense-sign of the future indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **a** for the first person singular, **ē** (shortened in the usual places) elsewhere.

#### Exercises

101. Inflect *dēligō* and *pervenīō* in the future indicative active, *occidō* and *impediō* in the future indicative passive.

102. 1. *obtinēbō*, *obtimeō*, *obtinēbam*. 2. *condēbant*, *condent*, *condunt*. 3. *terrēbit*, *terrēbitur*. 4. *conditur*, *condētur*. 5. *mittēbāmini*, *servābor*. 6. *expellētis*, *expellēmini*, *terrēmini*. 7. *manēs*, *mūniēs*, *dūcam*. 8. *vidēbitur*, *occidētur*. 9. *relinquēris*, *relinqueris*, *vulnerābere*. 10. *occidēbantur*, *dēfendimur*, *superābimus*.

103. 1. you were waited for, you are being saved. 2. we fortified, you saw. 3. it was being tried, we shall report. 4. you announced, they are waged. 5. you are showing, he did have. 6. I was advised, we do show. 7. you expel, you are being wounded. 8. we are impeded, we shall be wounded. 9. it is being destroyed, you will pre-

pare. 10. they will be found, they are being found.

11. we were sent, I am heard, I shall be seen.

## 104.

## Vocabulary

circumdō, -are, <sup>1</sup> <i>put around, surround.</i> [dō].	novus, new. <i>novelty.</i>
occupō, -āre, <i>seize.</i>	parvus, small, <i>little.</i>
Graeci (pl.), <i>the Greeks.</i>	pauci, paucae, pauca (pl.), <i>a few.</i>
iniūria, <i>wrong, injury.</i>	paucity.
iūstitia, <i>justice, uprightness.</i>	post, prep. with acc., <i>after.</i>
nātūra, <i>nature, character.</i>	[postea].
nōnne, adv., used to introduce a question to which an affirmative answer is expected, <i>not?</i> [nōn + -ne].	-que, enclitic, <i>and.</i>
num, adv., used to introduce a question to which a negative answer is expected.	

## Exercises

105. 1. Post proelium Graeci ad oppidum cum captivis veniebant. 2. Latini sunt miseri iniuriis (*see section 106 below*). 3. Numa iustitiam vocabatur bonus vir. 4. Nonne integras copias expectabimus? 5. Num<sup>2</sup> oppidum novum muros circumdabitis? 6. Pauci Troiani in Italiam pervenient. 7. Signum armis defendemus. 8. Romulus Remum occidet regnumque<sup>3</sup> occupabit. 9. Naturam loci castra ibi habemus. 10. Nam locus est ripae propinquus castrisque idoneus. 11. Nauta puerum amicitiam monabit.

106. Ablative of Cause or Reason. — In sentence 2 iniuriis tells why the Latins are wretched, and is to be translated *on account of*

<sup>1</sup> See page 14, foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Num cannot be translated by any single word. In English we show that a negative answer is expected by the tone in which the question is asked or by the form of the question: num circumdabitis? *you will not surround, will you?*

<sup>3</sup> -que is joined to the word it adds; if it adds a phrase or clause, it is usually joined to the first word of that phrase or clause. It must therefore be translated before the word to which it is joined.

*their wrongs* or *because of their wrongs*. Find other ablatives of cause or reason in the sentences above, and translate each in as many ways as you can.

107. 1. The prisoner is wretched on account of the danger of her son. 2. The little children were not frightened by the danger. 3. He has it<sup>1</sup> in mind to give his daughter in<sup>2</sup> marriage to his friend. 4. The Roman people seized the neighboring territory. 5. The nations of Italy are not free; for they are under the rule of the Romans. 6. He is not friendly to the Greeks, is he? 7. Is he not friendly to the Greeks? 8. He will be selected on account of his great influence. 9. The towns are many, but small.

## LESSON XIV

108. **The Irregular Verb *sum*.** — Learn the present, past, and future indicative of *sum*, *be* (section 493).

### 109.

### Vocabulary

*sum, esse*,<sup>8</sup> *be. essence.*

*ēducō, -āre, bring up, rear. education.*

*habitō, -āre, dwell, live. habitable.*

*inveniō, -ire, find. inventory.*

*moveō, -ēre, move.*

*captivus*,<sup>4</sup> *captive, prisoner.*

*diligentia, diligence, industry.*

*memoria, memory.*

*ēgregius, uncommon, remarkable.*

*egregious.*

*atque* or *ac*,<sup>5</sup> *conj., and.*<sup>6</sup>

*diū, adv., long, a long time.*

*quondam, adv., once upon a time, formerly, once.*

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> See section 96, sentence 2. Compare *in mind* and *in marriage* with reference to the force of *in*.

<sup>3</sup> This is the present infinitive.

<sup>4</sup> Notice that *captiva* denotes a female prisoner, *captivus* a male.

<sup>5</sup> *Ac* is not used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*. Of what other words is this true?

<sup>6</sup> *Et* is the simplest and commonest of the words translated *and*; *-que* indicates a close connection; *atque* (*ac*) adds something of greater importance than that which precedes it.

## Exercises

110. 1. Nam tum Numa, vir *ēgregiæ iūstitiæ*, rēgnābat.  
 2. Nam tum Numa, vir *ēgregiā iūstitiā* (*see III*), rēgnābat.  
 3. Nōnne Graeci oppidum mūrō fossāque circumdabunt?  
 4. Nātūrā sumus liberi. 5. Iniūriæ virōs liberōs ad bellum movent. 6. Quondam Rōmulus, vir magni cōnsili, in silvā habitābat. 7. Captivi diū erunt in magnō periculō. 8. Erās puer magnā diligentiā memoriāque. 9. Filiam amici in mātrimonium dūcēs.<sup>1</sup> 10. Posteā cum filiō et filiā ad lēgātum venit atque grātiā amicitiamque petit. 11. Post victōriam *ēgregiā* lēgātus erat magnā grātiā<sup>2</sup> in Italiā. 12. Integri atque bonō animō estis.

111. **Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.**—The ablative *ēgregiā iūstitiā* in sentence 2 modifies *vir* and describes Numa exactly as the genitive *ēgregiæ iūstitiæ* in sentence 1 does, and is to be translated in the same way. Find all the other examples of these constructions in the sentences above, and notice that an adjective is used in each.

112. 1. The boys will not be killed, but will be brought up on the river-bank where they were found. 2. With a few friends they will found Rome. 3. The Roman territory was increased by frequent wars. 4. The Latins will be of good courage. 5. The new lieutenant was a man<sup>3</sup> of great diligence. 6. He will come with large forces and will seize the town. 7. A good man is not moved by money, is he? 8. Once upon a time there<sup>4</sup> lived in a small town a man of uncommon<sup>5</sup> discretion. 9. We were wretched on account of the news. 10. You are a boy of remarkable memory.

<sup>1</sup> lead into marriage, i.e. marry.

<sup>2</sup> Put in *man* (a man of great influence).

<sup>3</sup> Omit; was of great diligence.

<sup>4</sup> Omit. Notice that this *there* does not denote place; for this reason *ibi* cannot be used.

<sup>5</sup> Adjectives in *ius* have *if* in the masc. and neut. gen. sing., not *i*.



ROMAN GIRL



## LESSON XV

**113. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic, ille, iste.*** — Learn the declension of *hic, this*, and *ille, that* (section 483).

Like *ille*, decline *iste, that (of yours)*.

**114. Use of *hic, ille, iste.*** — *Hic* denotes that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought; *ille*, that which is more remote. *Iste* is used of that which belongs to the person addressed.

The demonstrative pronouns may be used as adjectives: *haec sagitta, this arrow*.

## 115.

## Vocabulary

*hic, this.*

*ille, that.*

*iste, that of yours, that.*

*adiungō, -ere, join to, join, add.*

*junction.*

*claudō, -ere, shut, close. exclude.*

*deus, god. [dea].*

*Sabinī (pl.), the Sabines, a people of Italy.*

*clārus, famous, glorious.*

*deinde, adv., then,<sup>1</sup> next.*

*propter, prep. with acc., on account of.<sup>2</sup>*

*quidem, adv., indeed.*

*tamen, conj., yet, nevertheless.*

## Exercises

**116.** 1. Lupa ad illum locum properābit ubi sunt parvī puerī.  
2. Rōmulus et Remus cum lupā in illā rīpā inveniēbantur.  
3. Nōne Latīnī hīs in locīs quondam habitābant? 4. Deinde Rōmulus novum oppidum condit Sabinōsque ad populum Rōmānum adiungit. 5. Rōmānī quidem<sup>3</sup> Rōmulum vocābant deum. 6. Post Rōmulum Numa, vir ēgregiā iūstitiā, rēgnābat. 7. Numa ēgregiā iūstitiā<sup>4</sup> dēligitur. 8. Illud clārum imperium Rōmānum Rōmulus condēbat ac Numa

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *deinde* does not mean *then* in the sense of *at that time*. What word does mean this?

<sup>2</sup> In what other way may cause be expressed?

<sup>3</sup> *Quidem* follows the word it emphasizes. <sup>4</sup> Not descriptive ablative.

augēbat. 9. Iste ager est propinquus illi oppidō. 10. Num propter istās paucās iniūriās miser eris? 11. Hic est puer magnā diligentīā, ille est puer bonā memoriā.

117. 1. We often hear about the character of those Greeks. 2. On account of this news he will leave the prisoners in the camp. 3. He ought to move the camp from this place. 4. We shall surround that camp of yours. 5. Next we shall seize that town and close the gates. 6. Those plans of yours are indeed good, yet not remarkable. 7. That people will not long remain free. 8. These boys were brought up in the forest, those in the town.

## LESSON XVI

118. **Perfect Indicative Active.** — Learn the perfect indicative active of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **audiō**, and **sum** (sections 489, 490, 493).

119. **Personal Endings.** — The personal endings in the perfect indicative active are not the same as in the other tenses : —

<i>ī, I.</i>	<i>imus, we.</i>
<i>istī, you (singular).</i>	<i>istis, you (plural).</i>
<i>it, he, she, or it.</i>	<i>ērunt or ēre, they.</i>

120. **Uses of the Perfect.** — The Latin perfect has two uses : —

1. It may represent an action as already completed at the time of speaking : **monuī**, *I have advised*. In this use it corresponds to the English present perfect tense, and may be called present perfect.

2. It may merely represent a past action : **monuī**, *I advised* or *I did advise*. In this use it corresponds to the English past tense, and may be called past absolute.

Distinguish carefully between the past absolute use of the perfect tense and the past tense, which also may often be translated by the English past. The past tense in Latin describes a past action as going on, and may be called past descriptive; in the past absolute use the perfect simply states a past action as a fact: **monēbam**, *I advised* (i.e. I was giving the advice at the time); **monuī**, *I advised* (i.e. I once gave the advice).

## 121.

## Vocabulary

<b>appellō</b> , -āre, <i>call, name.</i> <i>appellation.</i>	<b>tribūnus</b> , <i>tribune</i> , a Roman magistrate.
<b>creō</b> , <sup>1</sup> -āre, <i>make, elect.</i> <i>creature.</i>	<b>ab</b> or <b>ā</b> , <sup>2</sup> prep. with abl., <i>away from, from.</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>avocation.</i>
<b>expugnō</b> , -āre, <i>take by assault, capture.</i> [ <b>ex</b> + <b>pugnō</b> ].	<b>aut</b> , conj., <i>or.</i>
<b>auxilium</b> , <i>aid.</i> [ <b>augeō</b> ].	<b>itaque</b> , conj., <i>and so, therefore.</i>
<b>decemvirī</b> (pl.), <i>decemvirs</i> , a board, or commission, of ten men.	[ <b>-que</b> ].
<b>numerus</b> , <i>number.</i> <i>numerous.</i>	<b>semper</b> , adv., <i>always.</i>
	<b>tandem</b> , adv., <i>at last, finally.</i>

## Exercises

122. 1. Hanc ēgregiam victōriam Sabīnī ex captīvis audīvērunt. 2. Numa nōn deus erat, tamen ā deā Egeriā amābātur. 3. Propter iūstitiam Numa semper erat magnā grātiā. 4. Hoc adiungam: sub rēgnō Numae bellum nōn gerēbātur. 5. Haec oppida auxilium ā Rōmānis petunt, sed tamen ā Porsenā celeriter expugnābuntur. 6. Tribūnī ā Rōmānis creābantur. 7. Hi tribūnī quondam vīrōs miserōs ab iniūriā dēfendēbant. 8. Magna quidem fuit diligentia

<sup>1</sup> Notice that this verb, though it ends in **eō**, is not of the second conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> This is the same word that is translated *by* when used with the ablative of agent.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that **ab** means *from* in the sense of *away from*, while **ex** means *from* in the sense of *out of*.

illōrum tribūnōrum. 9. Tandem clāri viri dēliguntur atque ē numerō appellantur decemviri. 10. Itaque his iniūriis decemvirōs occidētis aut expellētis ac portās claudētis. 11. Rōmāni cum magnō captivōrum numerō ā ripā veniunt.

**123.** 1. I have warned this lieutenant; for I am a friend of the Roman people. 2. Next I warned that lieutenant; for I was a friend of the Roman people. 3. You are moved by the memory of this friendship. 4. You don't live in that little town, do you? 5. I shall not remain there long; for I shall be made tribune. 6. He is a man of great courage and will take the town by assault. 7. Finally we seek aid from the Romans. 8. A large number of these weapons will be found; they are called javelins. 9. Those boys were being brought up by a good woman. 10. That friend of yours is always found in this place.

## LESSON XVII

**124. Perfect Indicative Passive.** — Learn the perfect indicative passive of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** (sections 489, 490).

The perfect passive of a Latin verb is made up of its perfect passive participle and the present of **sum**. The perfect participle is declined like **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case: **auditus est**, *he was heard*; **audita est**, *she was heard*; **auditum est**, *it was heard*; **auditi sunt**, **auditae sunt**, **audita sunt** *they were heard*.

**125. Principal Parts.** — Before the full conjugation of a verb can be given, it is necessary to know its present indicative active, present infinitive active, perfect indicative active, and perfect passive participle. From their importance these are called the principal parts of the verb.

The principal parts of all verbs that have been used in previous lessons must now be committed to memory :—

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.	
		I		
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum <sup>1</sup>	<i>love</i>
creō	creāre	creāvī	creātum	<i>make</i>

So all regular verbs of the first conjugation, but :—

dō	dare	dedī	datum	<i>give</i>
circumdō	circumdare	circumdēdī	circumdatum	<i>put around</i>

		II		
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum	<i>advise</i>
dēbeō	dēbere	dēbuī	dēbitum	<i>owe</i>
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum	<i>have</i>
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territum	<i>frighten</i>
obtimeō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentum	<i>hold</i> •
dēleō	dēlere	dēlēvī	dēlētum	<i>destroy</i>
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum	<i>increase</i> •
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum	<i>remain</i>
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum	<i>move</i>
videō	vidēre	vidī	visum	<i>see</i>

		III		
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum	<i>guide</i>
adiungō	adiungere	adiūnxī	adiūnctum	<i>join to</i> •
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductum	<i>lead</i> •
gerō	gerere	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i> •
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum	<i>shut</i> •
mittō	mittere	misi	missum	<i>send</i> •
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctum	<i>choose</i> •
relinquō	relinquere	reliquī	relictum	<i>leave</i> •
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfēdī	dēfēnsum	<i>defend</i>
incendō	incendere	incēdī	incēnsum	<i>burn</i> •
condō	condere	condidī	conditum	<i>found</i> •
expellō	expellere	expuli	expulsum	<i>drive out</i>
occidō	occidere	occidi	occisum	<i>kill</i>
petō	petere	petivī or petii	petitum	<i>seek</i> •

<sup>1</sup> Neuter nominative singular.

## IV

audiō	audire	audivī	auditum	<i>hear</i>
impediō	impedire	impedivī	impeditum	<i>check</i>
mūniō	mūnīre	mūnivī	mūnītum	<i>fortify</i>
veniō	venire	vēnī	ventum	<i>come</i>

So *conveniō, inveniō, perveniō.*

reperiō	reperire	repperī	reperitum	<i>find</i>
---------	----------	---------	-----------	-------------

## Exercises

126. Inflect in the perfect indicative active *dō, videō, dēfendō*, and *reperiō*; in the perfect indicative passive *creō, dēleō, petō*, and *reperiō*.

127. 1. venit, vēnit. 2. missa est, missa sunt. 3. appropinquātis, appropinquāvistis. 4. movēbunt, mōvērunt. 5. dēlēbit, dēlēvit. 6. creābimus, creāvimus. 7. circumdatum est, servātum est. 8. relinquit, reliquit. 9. monēre, monēbere. 10. dēfendere, dēfendēre. 11. incendunt, incendit. 12. incendērunt, incendit. 13. dēfenditis, dēfendistis. 14. habuistis, habuistī. 15. amāris, amābāris. 16. vīsus est, vīsum est, vīsa est. 17. obtinētur, claudētur. 18. expellent, expellentur. 19. vident, videntur. 20. mittis, venis.

128. 1. she is finding, she was finding, she will find, she has found. 2. she is found, she was found, she will be found, she has been found. 3. you do found, you did found, you will found, you have founded. 4. it is being founded, it was being founded, it will be founded, it has been founded. 5. they have given, it has been given. 6. he came, he saw. 7. I have had, they were checked. 8. you have assembled, he has been conquered. 9. we have remained, you have moved away. 10. I have sent, I have been sent. 11. we have sought, we have fortified. 12. he has increased, it has

been increased. 13. you have been chosen, they have been left. 14. it has been reported, they have arrived. 15. they have been killed, he has captured.

## THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME

Latinus<sup>1</sup> quondam in Italiā rēgnābat. Tum Trōia ā Graecis oppugnābātur. Tandem dēlēta est, atque Aenēās cum multis Trōiānis ex patriā in Italiam pervēnit. Huic virō Latinus Lāviniā filiam in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēās oppidum in Italiā condidit. Hoc oppidum Lāviniū ā 5 Lāviniā appellāvit. Ascanius, Aenēae<sup>2</sup> filius, Albam Longam condidit.

Posteā vir bonus in Albā rēgnābat. Hic vir ēgregiam filiam, Rhēam Silviam, habēbat. Rōmulus et Remus fuērunt filii Rhēae Silviae. Amūlius rēgnum occupāvit ac puerōs in 10 aquam misit.<sup>3</sup> Nam puerōs occidere in animō habēbat. Sed aqua Rōmulum Remumque in ripā reliquit. Lupa parvōs puerōs audīvit atque ad illum locum properāvit ubi erant. Saepe lupa veniēbat. Tum Faustulus, vir bonus, in locō huic ripae propinquō habitābat. Itaque lupam vidit et puerōs invēnit. 15 Rōmulus et Remus ā clārā fēminā ēducāti sunt. Posteā propter iniūriās Amūlium occidērunt. Deinde oppidum condidērunt in illō locō ubi ā Faustulō inventi sunt. Rōmulus novum oppidum Rōmam appellāvit. Sabīnōs ad populum Rōmānum adiūnxit multaque oppida expugnāvit. Tandem 20 occisus est. Sed Rōmāni Rōmulum deum appellābant.

Tum rēgnāvit Numa Pompilius, vir magnā iūstitiā. Numam Rōmāni ex oppidō Sabīnōrum vocāvērunt. Bellum

<sup>1</sup> Proper nouns and adjectives are given in the Latin-English vocabulary in the latter part of the book only when they are likely to cause difficulty.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive.

<sup>3</sup> *threw*.

quidem nōn gessit, tamen imperium Rōmānum auxit. Nam ā deā Egeriā amābātur. Post Numam Tullus Hostilius rēgnum obtinuit. Bellum saepe parābat. Multa oppida superāvit atque Albam Longam dēlēvit. Haec bella fuērunt multa  
5 et clāra. Deinde Ancus Mārcius imperium obtinuit et cum Latinis pugnāvit.

L.<sup>1</sup> Tarquinius Priscus ex Etrūriā dēmigrāvit et in agrum Rōmānum vēnit. Amicitiam Ancī petiit, sed postea per insidiās filiōs Ancī ex oppidō misit rēgnumque sic occupāvit.  
10 Multa bella gessit et multōrum oppidōrum agrōs ad imperium Rōmānum adiūnxit. Hunc Tarquinium Ancī filii occidērunt. Tum Servius Tullius, filius captivae, rēgnum obtinuit. Hic vir Tarquini filiam in mātrimonium dūxit. Servius Rōmam fossis et novō mūrō circumdedit. Ā filiā nōn amābātur, atque  
15 ab hāc fēminā et L. Tarquiniō Superbō, Priscī filiō, occisus est. Deinde hic L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnum occupāvit. Multōs populōs bellō superāvit. Tarquiniōs tandem propter multās iniūriās Rōmāni ex oppidō expulērunt portāsque clausērunt.

## LESSON XVIII

**129. Demonstrative Pronouns: *is* and *idem*.** — Learn the declension of *is*, *this* or *that*, and *idem*, *the same* (section 483).

*Idem* is only *is* with *dem* added. Notice, however, that the masculine nominative singular is *idem* instead of *isdem*; that the neuter nominative and accusative singular is *idem*, not *iddem*; that *m* is changed to *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; and that the masculine nominative plural and the dative and ablative plural of *is* are best spelled *ii*, *iis*, while *idem* has a single *i* in these cases.

---

<sup>1</sup> The abbreviation for *Lūcius*.

**130. Use of *is*.** — *Is* may denote any person or thing mentioned, and is therefore less definite than *hic* and *ille*: *hic puer*, *this boy* (here); *ille puer*, *that boy* (there); *is puer*, *this boy* or *that boy* (of whom I am speaking).

**131.****Vocabulary**

*is*, *this*, *that*.

*idem*, *the same*. *identical*.

*Gallī* (pl.), *the Gauls*, a people.

*parātus*, *prepared*, *ready*. [*parō*].

*hic*, *adv.*, *here*. [*hic*].

*neque* or *nec*, *conj.*, *and not*, *nor*.

*careō*, *carēre*, *caruī*, *caritūrus*,<sup>1</sup> *be cut off*, *be without*, *lack*.

*dēsistō*, *dēsistere*, *dēstitī*, *dēstitum*, *cease*, *give up*.

*excēdō*, *excēdere*, *excēssi*, *excēssum*, *go out*, *withdraw*. *antecedent*.

*liberō*, *liberāre*, *liberāvī*, *liberātum*, *set free*, *free*. [*liber*].

*prohibeō*, *prohibēre*, *prohibuī*, *prohibitum*, *keep*, *prevent*. *prohibition*.

**Exercises**

**132.** 1. Itaque Rōmulus ā Rōmānis deus appellābātur.  
 2. Parātus eram hīc manēre cum parvō numerō amicōrum.  
 3. Oppidum est expugnātum,<sup>2</sup> ēiusque oppidi ager ad imperium Rōmānum est adiūctus. 4. Gallī Rōmam occupāvērunt, ac posteā cum magnā praedā ex eō oppidō excessērunt. 5. Tandem Italia illō periculō (*see 133*) liberāta est. 6. Gallī oppidō excessērunt. 7. Rōmānī ā fugā dēstitērunt, Gallōsque ex agrō Rōmānō expulērunt. 8. Rōmānī fugā dēstitērunt, Gallōsque agrō Rōmānō expulērunt. 9. Tamen in eō periculō nōn caruimus auxiliō deōrum. 10. Rōmānī Gallōs ab Italiā prohibēbunt. 11. Rōmānī Gallōs Italiā prohibēbunt. 12. Eōdem animō semper erō, neque propter istud periculum bellō dēsistam. 13. Deinde lēgātī oppidō expulsi sunt et portae clausae sunt.

<sup>1</sup> This is the future active participle. *Careō* has no perfect participle.

<sup>2</sup> This is the same as *expugnātum* est. The forms of *sum* are often put before the perfect participle.

**133. Ablative of Separation.** — In sentence 5 *illō periculō* means *from that danger*. Notice that no preposition is used for *from*. The idea of separation is often expressed by the ablative without a preposition, regularly so with *careō* and *liberō*. Find other ablatives of separation in the sentences above, and observe the use and the omission of prepositions.

**134.** 1. At that time indeed the Romans ceased to elect tribunes. 2. That friend of yours lacks money. 3. After that battle Romans and Sabines lived in the same town. 4. These famous men freed their fatherland from the rule of the decemvirs. 5. I was without influence; and so I was not made tribune. 6. They are prepared to withdraw from the town, nor will they be prevented by the lieutenant. 7. We have captured this camp, and here we shall remain. 8. Then those prisoners were set free or killed.

## LESSON XIX

**135. Past Perfect Indicative.** — Learn the past perfect indicative, active and passive, of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō* (sections 489, 490); and the past perfect indicative of *sum* (section 493).

Notice that the past perfect active is formed as if by adding the past of *sum* to the perfect stem, and that the past perfect passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the past of *sum*.

### 136.

### Vocabulary

*elephantus*, *elephant*.

*Pyrrhus*, *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.

*sententia*, *opinion*, *view*. *consent*.

*anteā*, adv., *before*, *previously*.

*antepenult*.

*apud*, prep. with acc., *among*, *with*.

dēsperō, dēsperāre, dēsperāvī, dēsperātum, *be hopeless, despair.*  
 fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, *put to flight, rout.* [fuga].  
 revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum, *call back,<sup>1</sup> recall.* [vocō].  
 timeō, timēre, timuī,<sup>2</sup> *fear, be anxious. timid.*  
 vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, *defeat.* [victōria].

### Exercises

137. Inflect in the past perfect indicative active **dō, dēleō, relinquō,** and **veniō**; in the past perfect indicative passive **creō, moveō, expellō,** and **reperiō.**

138. 1. Tribūnus creātus eram; nam eram magnā grātiā apud hunc populum. 2. Numerus tribūnōrum antea auctus erat. 3. Tum parātī erāmus eō locō excēdere. 4. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs auxiliō elephantōrum vicerat. 5. Rōmānī elephantōs Pyrrhī vulnerāverant. 6. Decemvirī cōpiīs armisque carēbant et dē victōriā dēsperābant. 7. Hanc sententiam semper habuī, neque hāc sententiā dēsistam. 8. Istā sententiā<sup>3</sup> ex patriā expulsus erās, sed posteā revocātus es. 9. Oppida expugnāverātis, praesidiaque expulerātis aut occiderātis. 10. Apud Rōmānōs Rōmulus appellātus erat deus.

139. 1. The Gauls had always been men<sup>4</sup> of great courage. 2. Yet the Romans had here defeated and routed the same Gauls before. 3. The ambassador lacked influence; and so he had been recalled. 4. Then we hastened to come into Italy, but were prevented. 5. I was hopeless about this plan. 6. You had not ceased to fear the Romans. 7. At last I have freed my country from these perils. 8. I am anxious about that boy; for he is without friends.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *back* is the meaning of the prefix *re-*.

<sup>2</sup> *Timeō* has neither perfect passive nor future active participle.

<sup>3</sup> See section 106.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

## LESSON XX

**140. Relative Pronoun.** — Learn the declension of *quī*, *who*, *which*, *that* (section 485).

**141. Vocabulary**

*quī*, *who*, *which*, *that*.

*equus*, *horse*. *equine*.

*frūmentum*, *grain*.

*socius*, *ally*. *social*.

*autem*, *conj.*, *however*.

*subitō*, *adv.*, *suddenly*.

*comprehendō*, *comprehendere*, *comprehendī*, *comprehēsum*, *seize*, *arrest*.  
*comprehension*.

*conciliō*, *conciliāre*, *conciliāvī*, *conciliātum*, *win over*. *reconciliation*.

*renovō*, *renovāre*, *renovāvī*, *renovātum*, *renew*. [*novus*].

*scribō*, *scribere*, *scripsī*, *scriptum*, *write*. *postscript*.

**Exercises**

**142.** 1. Rōmulus oppidum hīc condidit, quod Rōmam ap-  
pellāvit. 2. Ad Pyrrhum ea<sup>1</sup> scripsī quae audiveram.  
3. Rōmānī eōs elephantōs timēbant quōs Pyrrhus habēbat  
quōrumque auxiliō eāsdem cōpiās antea vicerat et fugāverat.  
4. Eōs populōs autem, quī Rōmānīs amīcī fuerant, lēgātus  
conciliāre bellōque prohibēre temptābat. 5. Neque renovābō  
eam amicitiam quā tum dēstitī. 6. Rōmānī dēspērābant dē  
eō frūmentō quod ā sociis missum erat. 7. Hīc vir est idem  
quī patriam liberāvit. 8. Magnum numerum equōrum, quī  
relictī erant in castris Gallōrum, comprehendērunt. 9. Ea  
quae apud Gallōs gerēbantur nūntiāvit.

**143. Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** — Notice that the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that it is not necessarily in the same case as the antecedent. Determine the case of the relative in each of the sentences above, and the reason why that case is used.

---

<sup>1</sup> Neut. pl., *those (things)*.

144. 1. He reported the same things that we had often heard before. 2. He wrote to Pyrrhus about those<sup>1</sup> towns that were without a garrison. 3. With a few horses which they had seized they quickly withdrew from the camp. 4. Those ambassadors to whom the allies had given money were suddenly recalled and arrested.<sup>2</sup> 5. I have the same opinion about this man that I have always had. 6. The grain that the Romans were waiting for had been destroyed by the allies. 7. The Romans, however,<sup>3</sup> were prepared to win over the allies and renew the war.



ROMULUS

## LESSON XXI

145. **Interrogative Pronoun.** — The interrogative pronoun **quis**, *who? which? what?* is declined like the relative pronoun **quī**, except that it has two forms, **quis** and **quī**, for the masculine nominative singular, and two, **quid** and **quod**, for the neuter nominative and accusative singular (section 486).

The interrogative pronoun may be used as an adjective (except the forms **quis** and **quid**); the forms **quī** and **quod** and the feminine singular are regularly used only as adjectives: **quis?** *who?* **quī vir?** *what man?* **quae fēmina?** *what woman?* **quid?** *what?* **quod oppidum?** *what town?*

<sup>1</sup> The demonstrative *that, those*, when used merely to introduce the relative, is to be rendered by *is*, not *ille*.

<sup>2</sup> *revocātī et comprehēnsī sunt*. As in English, the auxiliary is expressed with only one of the verbs.

<sup>3</sup> **Autem** cannot stand first in a sentence or clause.

## 146.

## Vocabulary

quis, *who? which? what?*  
 barbarus, *barbarian.*

conloquium, *conference. colloquial.*  
 litterae (pl.), *despatch, letter.*

contrā, prep. with acc., *against.*  
*contradict.*

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, be-*  
*fore; in place of, for. pronoun.*

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēi, cōactum, *collect; also compel. cogent.*

dīcō, dicere, dixi, dictum, *say, speak. contradict.*

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum, *demand.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *ask, inquire.*

## Exercises

147. 1. Barbari in conloquiō contrā imperium Rōmānum dixerunt. 2. Lēgātus autem iis cōpiis quās subitō coēgerat Gallōs vicit et fugāvit. 3. Quae cōpiae prō castris relictæ sunt? 4. Sociōs coēgit id frūmentum mittere quod antea postulāverat. 5. Quid prō frūmentō dabō? 6. Quōs populōs illi lēgātī Rōmānōrum conciliāvērunt? 7. Quod oppidum Rōmulus condidit? 8. Quid in iis litteris quās ad Pyrrhum misisti dē illis elephantis scripserās? 9. Eādē in sententiā maneō in quā semper fui. 10. Num dē hōc cōnsiliō dēspērās? 11. Quis fuit ille vir quī quidem patriā expulsus est, sed postea revocātus est? 12. Quī amicus amicū nōn amat?

148. 1. Tribunes, however, were elected in place of the decemvirs, who were then arrested. 2. Whom do you fear? 3. Against whose rule was the war waged? 4. What nations renewed their friendship with the Romans? 5. Did the barbarians demand the same things about which we had spoken in the conference? 6. About whose character did you inquire? 7. Frequent despatches had been sent concerning those troops that were being collected among the Gauls. 8. Which horse was selected?

## LESSON XXII

**149. Future Perfect Indicative.** — Learn the future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** (sections 489, 490); and the future perfect indicative of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the future perfect active is formed as if by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem, and that the future perfect passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the future of **sum**. But the third person plural in the active ends in **erint**, not **erunt**.

## Exercises

**150.** Inflect in the future perfect active **vocō**, **dēleō**, **condō**, and **veniō**; in the future perfect passive **creō**, **videō**, **vincō**, and **reperiō**.

**151.** 1. *erō, revocāverō, revocātus erō.* 2. *erās, prohibuerās, prohibitus erās.* 3. *dederat, liberat.* 4. *vēnerit, reperit.* 5. *repperit, reppererit.* 6. *mōverātis, dēspērātis.* 7. *vīderitis, quaeritis.* 8. *vīcērunt, victī erunt.* 9. *mōverint, mōvērunt.* 10. *erunt, fuerint.* 11. *vidēris, vīderis, vidēberis.* 12. *dēfenderis,<sup>1</sup> dēfendēris.*

**152.** 1. I shall have, I shall have been. 2. he had been, he had. 3. we had ceased, we had had. 4. we shall have written, we had written. 5. he had come, they had been defeated. 6. they will have been, they will have been set free. 7. you will have reigned, you will have been frightened. 8. you are excelling, you will have excelled. 9. she had been sent, it will have been surrounded.

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate this in two ways.

## 153.

## Vocabulary

**servus, slave. servile.**

**supplicium, punishment, penalty.**

**reliquus, adj., the remaining, the rest of. [relinquō].**

**ad,<sup>1</sup> prep. with acc., near, at.**

**sī, conj., if.**

**nisi, conj., if not, unless, except.**

**sine, prep. with abl., without.**

**armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum, arm. [arma].**

**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, consider; also intend. cogitation.**

**cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutum, station, fix, determine. constitution.**

## Exercises

154. 1. Cōgitāmus eōs servōs armāre quōs conciliāverimus.  
 2. Sī reliquae cōpiae coāctae erunt, bellum contrā barbarōs sine magnō periculō renovābimus. 3. Prō hīs iniūriis supplicium cōstituēmus. 4. Quis eās litterās vidēbit quās scripserimus? 5. In hōc conloquiō dē litteris quaesivī.  
 6. Quod cōsiliū cōgitās? 7. Nisi idōneum equum repererō, hic manēbō. 8. Sī conloquium petent, nōn sine periculō veniētis. 9. Nōn veniēmus nisi cum praesidiō.

155. **Future Tenses in Subordinate Clauses.** — Notice that in sentence 7 **reppererō**, *I shall have found*, may be translated *I find*. When both the principal and the subordinate verb represent future actions, English regularly uses the present in the subordinate clause, but Latin requires the more exact future or future perfect.

156. 1. Unless you prevent,<sup>2</sup> they will arm the slaves.  
 2. Then they will demand aid from<sup>3</sup> their allies. 3. The rest of the slaves were suddenly arrested at the gate. 4. If, however, the barbarians burn<sup>2</sup> the grain, where shall you station the troops? 5. The place which had been selected

<sup>1</sup> This is the same word that is translated *to* when used with a verb expressing motion.

<sup>2</sup> See section 155.

<sup>3</sup> ab.

was near Rome. 6. The remaining troops were quickly collected. 7. We have determined to wage war with the Gauls. 8. They are said to have a great number of horses.

## LESSON XXIII

157. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns  
with Genitive Plural in *um*

	<b>hiems</b> <i>winter</i>	<b>cōnsul</b> <i>consul</i>	<b>arbor</b> <i>tree</i>	
				SINGULAR
<u>NOM.</u>	<b>hiems</b>	<b>cōnsul</b>	<b>arbor</b>	<u>ENDINGS</u> <b>s or none</b>
<u>GEN.</u>	<b>hiemis</b>	<b>cōnsulis</b>	<b>arboris</b>	<b>is</b>
<u>DAT.</u>	<b>hiemī</b>	<b>cōnsulī</b>	<b>arborī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<u>ACC.</u>	<b>hiemem</b>	<b>cōnsulem</b>	<b>arborem</b>	<b>em</b>
<u>ABL.</u>	<b>hieme</b>	<b>cōnsule</b>	<b>arbore</b>	<b>e</b>
				PLURAL
<u>NOM.</u>	<b>hiemēs</b>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>arborēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<u>GEN.</u>	<b>hiemum</b>	<b>cōsulum</b>	<b>arborum</b>	<b>um</b>
<u>DAT.</u>	<b>hiemibus</b>	<b>cōsulibus</b>	<b>arboribus</b>	<b>ibus</b>
<u>ACC.</u>	<b>hiemēs</b>	<b>cōsulēs</b>	<b>arborēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<u>ABL.</u>	<b>hiemibus</b>	<b>cōsulibus</b>	<b>arboribus</b>	<b>ibus</b>

158. **Case-Endings.** — Notice that in this declension also, as in the first and the second, the dative and the ablative plural have the same ending. This is true of all declensions.

What is the ending of these cases in the first and second declensions?

159. **Gender.** — Nouns of all three genders are found in the third declension, and the gender of any noun of this declension must be learned with the noun.

## 160.

## Vocabulary

**agger**, m., *agger*, a mound used in military operations.

**arbor**, f., *tree*.

**carcer**, m., *prison*. *incarcerate*.

**cōnsul**, m., *consul*, chief magistrate of Rome.

**Hannibal**, m., *Hannibal*, a famous Carthaginian general.

**hiems**, f., *winter*.

**mulier**, f., *woman*.

**dum**, conj., *while*.

**iterum**, adv., *again, a second time*  
*reiterate*.

**primus**, adj., *first*. [prō].

## Exercises

161. Like **arbor**, decline **agger**, **carcer**, and **mulier**.

162. 1. Dum illī primī cōsulēs imperium obtinent (*see 163*), bellum contrā Rōmānōs gessit. 2. Tandem ii servī, qui in carcere per hiemem māserant, liberātī sunt. 3. Quid in conloquiō dē illis mulieribus dictum est? 4. Dum haec<sup>1</sup> in oppidō geruntur, Rōmānī aggerem parāvērunt. 5. Tandem propter magnum periculum puerōs mulierēsque armāre cōstituērunt. 6. Si hāc in silvā cōpiās cōstitueris, his magnīs arboribus dēfendentur. 7. Illās litterās ā cōsule iterum postulat. 8. Dum reliquae<sup>2</sup> Hannibalis cōpiaē cōguntur, hiems appropinquābat. 9. Dum in carcere sum, dē suppliciō saepe quaesivī. 10. Tribūnī prō cōsulibus creatī sunt.

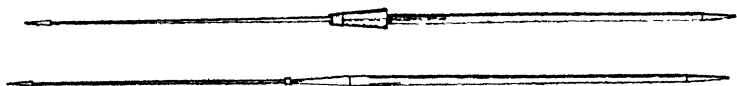
163. Present Indicative with *dum*.—The present indicative is used with **dum**, *while*, even when a past action is represented; it must then be translated by the past.

164. 1. Whose troops will remain near the town? 2. You will not capture the first town without an agger. 3. What town of Italy did Hannibal attack? 4. This is the town

<sup>1</sup> Compare *ea*, section 142, sentence 2.

<sup>2</sup> See section 82.

which Hannibal attacked. 5. The trees about which you inquire are in front of the prison. 6. We intend to remain under this tree. 7. While these things were going on,<sup>1</sup> the Romans seized the camp of the Gauls with the women<sup>2</sup> and children. 8. The despatch announced the victory of the consuls. 9. While the consul was hastening into Italy, the lieutenant defeated the barbarians a second time. 10. Unless you come<sup>3</sup> without arms, they will not remain in the conference.



ROMAN JAVELINS

## LESSON XXIV

**165. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns  
with Genitive Plural in *um* (continued)**

Learn the declension of **dux**, *leader*; **rēx**, *king*; **palūs**, *swamp*; and **virtūs**, *bravery* (section 459).

Notice that final **c** and **g** of the stem unite with the ending **s** to form **x** in the nominative singular and that final **d** and **t** of the stem are dropped before **s**.

**166.** Learn the declension of **centuriō**, *centurion*; **homō**, *man*; **miles**, *soldier*; and **pater**, *father* (section 459).

Notice that the stem does not clearly appear in the nominative singular of these words. It is necessary, therefore, to learn not only the nominative singular and the gender of third-declension nouns, but their genitive singular as well.

<sup>1</sup> Compare section 162, sentence 4.

<sup>2</sup> Notice how *women and children* is expressed in section 162, sentence 5.

<sup>3</sup> See section 155.

## 167.

## Vocabulary

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion*,  
a Roman military officer.

dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander*.  
[dūcō].

homō, hominis, m. and f., *human*  
*being, man. homicide.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law. legal.*

miles, militis, m., *soldier. military.*

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pater, patris, m., *father; patrēs*  
(pl.), *senators. paternal.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace. pacify.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king. [regō].*

sēditio, sēditioṅis, f., *sedition, insur-*  
*rection.*

suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f., *suspicion.*

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *bravery, valor.*  
[vir].

postquam, conj., *after. [post].*

ubi,<sup>1</sup> conj., *when.*

## Exercises

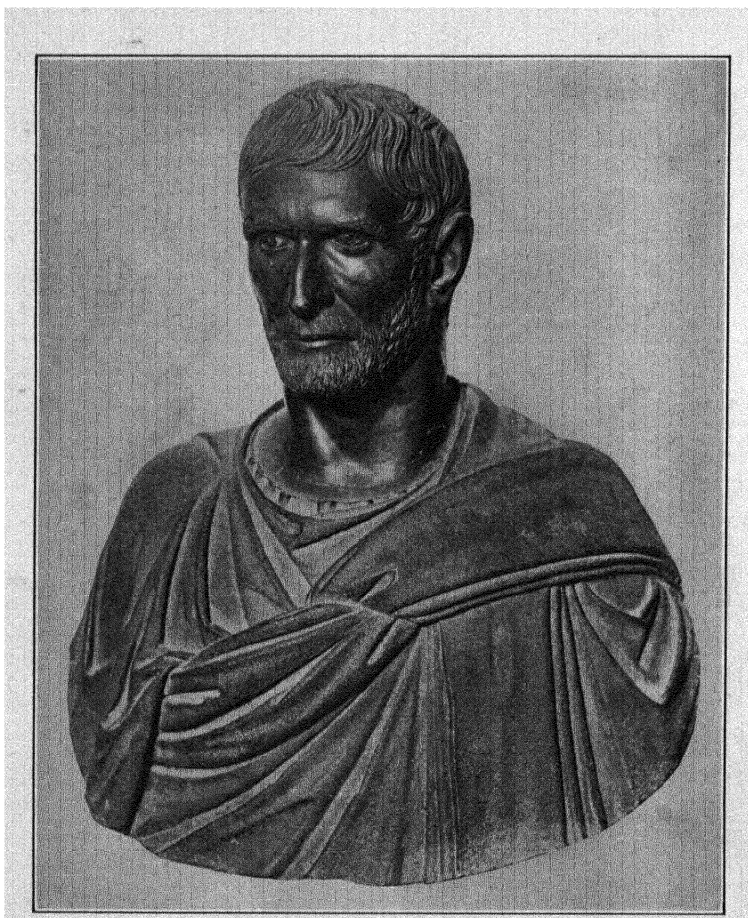
168.) 1. Rēx expulsus est, cūius in locum cōsulēs creāti sunt. 2. Ubi servi comprehēnsi sunt, nōn in carcerem sed ad supplicium ducti sunt. 3. Ubi hoc proelium lēgātō nūntiātum est, castra movēre cōstituit. 4. Oppidum aggere oppugnāre cōgitābāmus. 5. Hic fuerant crēbrae arborēs. 6. Itaque centuriōnēs idōneōs hominēs dēlēgerint. 7. Ubi lēgātus appropinquāvit, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt. 8. Dum cōsul reliquōs militēs armat, Hannibal cōpiās per palūdēs dūxit. 9. Nam Hannibal fuit magni cōsili et virtūtis. 10. Postquam miseri hominēs sēditioṅem mōvērunt,<sup>2</sup> patrēs pācem iterum petiērunt. 11. Tum iniūriæ et suspiciōnēs populum incendēbant. 12. Hae lēgēs antea ā decemviris scriptæ erant.

169. Perfect Indicative with *postquam* and *ubi*.—Notice that the perfect indicative is used with *postquam* and *ubi* in clauses expressing time. In this use it may often be translated by the past perfect.

<sup>1</sup> This is the same word that has already been given as an adverb meaning *where*.

<sup>2</sup> *stirred up*.





BRUTUS

170. 1. After the king had been driven out, consuls were elected. 2. Unless winter prevents,<sup>1</sup> I shall come. 3. When the first news came, the commander gave up his plan.<sup>2</sup> 4. The centurion was arrested by the commander on account of a suspicion of insurrection. 5. When winter came, the soldiers remained near the marshes without great danger. 6. Among the Gauls the women are of remarkable bravery. 7. After the men<sup>3</sup> had been killed, the women defended the camp from the Romans. 8. If the senators give the new laws which we demand, there will be peace and friendship in place of suspicion and sedition.

## THE EARLY REPUBLIC

Postquam Tarquiniī expulsī sunt, cōsulēs prō rēgibus creāti sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātinus. Collātinus autem in suspiciōnem vēnit. Nam appellābātur Tarquinius. Itaque Rōmānī hunc virum expulērunt, cūius in locum P.<sup>4</sup> Valerius Pūblicola cōsul creātus est. Brūtus in bellō ā filiō L. Tarquiniī Superbī occisus est. Pater patriae appellātur.

Posteā propter multās patrum iniūriās sēditiō mōta est. Multi militēs ex oppidō excessērunt atque castra aggere fossaque mūnīvērunt. Hic diū mānsērunt. Patrēs terrēbantur; nam sine iis quī excesserant bella gerere nōn parāti erant. Itaque pācem petiērunt et plēbem<sup>5</sup> sic conciliāvērunt: tribūnī sunt creāti, quī plēbem ab iniūriīs patrum dēfendēbant.

Tamen multae iniūriae mānsērunt. Tandem clārī virī sunt dēlēctī, quī appellābantur decemvirī, in<sup>6</sup> his Appius Claudius. 15

<sup>1</sup> See section 155.

<sup>2</sup> See section 132, sentence 12.

<sup>3</sup> Vir, not homō, is used for man as distinguished from woman.

<sup>4</sup> The abbreviation for Pūblius.

<sup>5</sup> plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people, the plebeians.

<sup>6</sup> among.

Imperium prō cōsulibus obtinēbant et lēgēs scripsērunt. Appius Claudius Vergīniam, filiam centuriōnis, amābat ac per insidiās comprehendere<sup>1</sup> cōgitābat. Filiam pater occidit; tum militēs ad sēditionem mōvit. Sic decemvirī sunt  
5 expulsī.

M.<sup>2</sup> Fūrius Camillus, quī Vēiōs<sup>3</sup> expugnāverat, propter suspiciōnēs patriā expulsus est. Postea tamen patriam servāvit. Nam Gallōs, quōs Rōmānī semper timēbant, bellō superāvit. Galli cōpiās Rōmānōrum ad Alliam vicerant et Rōmam occu-  
10 pāverant. Tum subitō Camillus, quī in patriam revocātus erat, magnis cum cōpiis ad oppidum pervēnit. Gallōrum cōpiās procliō vicit et dēlēvit.

Erant in Italiā multa Graecōrum oppida, quae imperium populi Rōmānī timēbant. Haec oppida ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpirī,  
15 auxilium petiērunt, quī in Italiam cum magnis cōpiis elephantisque multis vēnit. Contrā hunc rēgem missus est P. Valerius Laevīnus cōsul. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs elephantis vicit. Tamen Rōmānī nōn dēspērāvērunt neque pācem petiērunt. Lēgātōs dē captivis ad rēgem misērunt, in his C.<sup>4</sup>  
20 Fabricium. Hunc clārum virum Pyrrhus pecūniā temptāvit. Fabricius autem nōn mōtus est; nam erat magnae iūstītiaē. Bellum est renovātum et multōs per annōs gestum. Rōmānī quidem prō patriā pugnābant. Tandem rēgem superāvērunt atque ex Italiā expulērunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vergīniam is the object of this verb as well as of amābat, but we must say in English *to seize her*.

<sup>2</sup> The abbreviation for Mārcus.

<sup>3</sup> Many names of towns are plural in Latin.

<sup>4</sup> The abbreviation for Gāius.

## LESSON XXV

171. Third Declension : Neuter Nouns  
with Genitive Plural in *um*

	<b>nōmen</b>	<b>genus</b>	
	<i>name</i>	<i>race</i>	
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	nōmen	genus	ENDINGS <i>none</i>
GEN.	nōminis	generis	<i>.is</i>
DAT.	nōminī	generī	<i>ī</i>
ACC.	nōmen	genus	<i>none</i>
ABL.	nōmine	genere	<i>e</i>
		PLURAL	
NOM.	nōmina	genera	<i>a</i>
GEN.	nōminum	generum	<i>um</i>
DAT.	nōminibus	generibus	<i>ibus</i>
ACC.	nōmina	genera	<i>a</i>
ABL.	nōminibus	generibus	<i>ibus</i>

## 172. Vocabulary

corpus, corporis, n., <i>body</i> . <i>incorporate</i> .	magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., <i>greatness, size</i> . [magnus].
flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i> . <i>fluid</i> .	nōmen, nōminis, n., <i>name</i> . <i>nomi-native</i> .
genus, generis, n., <i>race</i> ; also <i>kind</i> . <i>general</i> .	opus, operis, n., <i>work</i> . <i>coöperate</i> .
iter, itineris, n., <i>march</i> ; also <i>route</i> . <i>itinerary</i> .	potestās, potestātis, f., <i>power</i> . <i>potent</i> .
et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i> .	

## Exercises

173. Decline *corpus*, *flūmen*, *iter*, and *opus*.

174. 1. Rōmulus fuit magnus et in bellō et in pāce.  
2. Gallī Rōmānōs magnitūdine (*see 175*) corporum superant.

3. Hannibal dum<sup>1</sup> apud rēgem est, in suspīciōnem vēnit.  
 4. Postquam militēs ad flūmen pervēnērunt, fugā dēstitērunt.  
 5. Hoc oppidum Gallōrum Rōmānī operibus circumdabant.  
 6. Centuriō et animō et corpore miser esse dicitur. 7. Dux  
 erat ēgregiā virtūte. 8. Dux erat ēgregius virtūte.  
 9. Rōmānum genus semper fuit primum et virtūte et po-  
 testāte. 10. Paucī hominēs in illis locis iter Hannibalis im-  
 pediēbant. 11. Pater hūius mulieris erat Rōmānus nōmine,  
 genere barbarus.

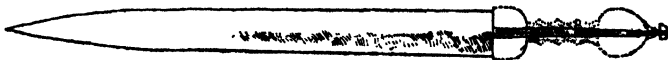
**175. Ablative of Respect.** — The ablative **magnitūdine** in sen-  
 tence 2 tells in what respect the Gauls surpass the Romans, and is to  
 be translated with *in*.

Consider carefully the ablatives in sentences 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 11 ;  
 and determine in what construction each is used.

**176.** 1. He is consul, not in name but in power. 2. When  
 this news came, the senators feared an insurrection. 3. I  
 was arrested a second time and remained in prison through  
 the winter. 4. A work of this kind the Romans called an  
 agger. 5. We had determined to come to the river by the  
 same route, but were prevented by the size of the marsh.  
 6. You are said to excel the rest of the soldiers in bravery.  
 7. The soldiers found the body of the leader near the trees,  
 where he had been killed. 8. The Roman race excelled  
 the Greeks both in laws and in arms.

---

<sup>1</sup> *while Hannibal*, not *Hannibal while*. When a Latin sentence begins  
 with a subordinate clause whose subject is also the subject of the principal  
 clause, this word is regularly put first.



ROMAN SWORD

## LESSON XXVI

**177. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*.** — Learn the indicative, active and passive, of *capiō*, *take* (section 491).

*Capiō* and some other verbs in *iō* have *ere* in the present infinitive active and are put in the third conjugation. Notice, however, that their forms are the same as those of verbs of the fourth conjugation in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and throughout the past and future indicative. These forms are those in which the *i* is followed by another vowel.

**178. Vocabulary**

*causa*, -ae,<sup>1</sup> f., *cause, reason*.

*cupiditās*, *cupiditātis*, f., *desire*.

[*cupiō*].

*timor*, *timōris*, m., *fear*. [*timeō*].

*prīstinus*, adj., *former, old-time*.

[*prīmus*].

*dē*,<sup>2</sup> prep. with abl., *down from*,

*from. depress*.

*capiō*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *take, capture*. [*captivus*].

*accipiō*, *accipere*, *accēpi*, *acceptum*, *receive*. [*ad + capiō*].

*cupiō*, *cupere*, *cupivi*, *cupitum*, *desire, wish*. [*cupiditās*].

*faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factum*, *do, make. factory*.

*retineō*, *retinēre*, *retinui*, *retentum*, *retain*. [*obtimeō*].

*vitō*, *vitāre*, *vitāvi*, *vitātum*, *avoid. inevitable*.

**Exercises**

**179.** 1. *capēris*, *dūcēris*, *movēris*. 2. *cēperis*, *capiēris*.  
3. *facit*, *fēcit*. 4. *faciēbam*, *faciam*, *fēceram*. 5. *vidēs*,  
*capiēs*, *retinēbis*. 6. *quaerēs*, *reperiēs*. 7. *cēperant*, *pro-*  
*perant*. 8. *capere*, *capiēre*, *cēpēre*. 9. *fēcistis*, *facitis*.  
10. *impediēbantur*, *capiēbantur*, *occidēbantur*. 11. *cēpērunt*,  
*gerunt*. 12. *venīs*, *accipis*. 13. *venītis*, *accipitis*. 14. *im-*  
*pedīmini*, *capimini*.

<sup>1</sup> This is the ending of the genitive singular. It is given to show to which declension the noun belongs.

<sup>2</sup> This is the same word that has already been given with the meaning *about, concerning*.

180. 1. you take, you hear. 2. it is taken, it is heard. 3. they are leading, they are taken. 4. they will make, they will send. 5. you will be heard, you will be taken. 6. he was sending, I was receiving. 7. to make, to hear, to guide, to advise. 8. we desire, we are fortifying. 9. we are being impeded, we are being captured.

181. 1. Ubi barbarī cum nūntium accēpērunt, timōre belli terrēbantur. 2. Postquam magnitudinem operum vidērunt quibus circumdatī erant, novum cōsilium cēpērunt<sup>1</sup> ac pācem petiērunt. 3. Dē oppidīs in ea loca dēmigrābunt quae flūmine palūdibusque mūniuntur. 4. Hic locus nōmen cēpit ex procliō quod ibi factum est.<sup>2</sup> 5. Eā dē causā<sup>3</sup> memoriā pristinae virtūtis retinēre dēbēmus. 6. Nisi integer es et corpore et animō, hoc facere nōn dēbēs. 7. Tribūnus centuriōnēs militēsque cupiditāte sēditionis<sup>4</sup> incendēbat. 8. Est in hominibus cīus generis magna cupiditās pecūniae. 9. Nōne hanc suspiciōnem vitāre cupis?

182. 1. We wish to do this, but are prevented by the laws. 2. He is a king in his desire for<sup>5</sup> power, a woman in his fear of danger. 3. Will the leader receive the plunder which has been taken? 4. For<sup>6</sup> the same reason new plans were formed.<sup>7</sup> 5. The father retained the memory of his former valor. 6. He freed his country from the old-time fear of the Gauls. 7. He was arrested on account of a suspicion of treachery. 8. Men of this kind always desire to avoid danger.

<sup>1</sup> took, that is formed.

<sup>2</sup> was made, that is was fought.

<sup>3</sup> from this cause, that is for this reason.

<sup>4</sup> The genitive is here best translated with *for*, as often when it would become the object, if the noun or adjective which it modifies were changed to a verb expressing the same idea (*they desired an insurrection*).

<sup>5</sup> See section 181, sentence 7.

<sup>6</sup> See section 181, sentence 5.

<sup>7</sup> See section 181, sentence 2.

## LESSON XXVII

183. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns  
with Genitive Plural in *ium*

	<b>hostis</b> <i>enemy</i>	<b>urbs</b> <i>city</i>	
			SINGULAR
NOM.	hostis	urbs	ENDINGS <b>is or s</b>
GEN.	hostis	urbis	<b>is</b>
DAT.	hostī	urbī	<b>i</b>
ACC.	hostem	urbem	<b>em</b>
ABL.	hoste	urbe	<b>e</b>
			PLURAL
NOM.	hostēs	urbēs	<b>ēs</b>
GEN.	hostium	urbium	<b>ium</b>
DAT.	hostibus	urbibus	<b>ibus</b>
ACC.	hostis or hostēs	urbis or urbēs	<b>is or ēs</b>
ABL.	hostibus	urbibus	<b>ibus</b>

184. Case-Endings. — In what cases do the endings of these words differ from those of *hiems*?

185.

## Vocabulary

*civitas, civitatis, f., state. civil. eō, adv., to that place, thither. [is].*  
*classis, classis, f., fleet. extrā, prep. with acc., outside of.*  
*hostis, hostis, m., enemy. hostile. [ex].*  
*nāvis, nāvis,<sup>1</sup> f., ship, vessel. naval. iam, adv., already.*  
*urbs, urbis, f., city. urban.*  
*cēteri, cēterae, cētera, pl. adj., the other.*

*dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum, lead down, lead away, withdraw; also bring. [dē + dūcō].*

*dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum, desert.*

*trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, hand over, surrender. tradition.*

<sup>1</sup> The ablative singular of this word often has the ending *i*: *nāvī*.

## Exercises

186. Like *hostis*, decline *classis* and *nāvis*.

187. 1. Eō hostium<sup>1</sup> cōpiae eōdem itinere dēductae sunt. 2. Gallī propter magnitudinem operum Rōmānōrum dēspērāverant atque oppidum trādiderant. 3. Militēs ex urbibus dēdūcentur. 4. Eō militēs iam iter fēcerant.<sup>2</sup> 5. Postquam nūntium dē hostium classe accēpērunt, proelium vitāre cōstituērunt. 6. Nōn sine causā ducem dēserimus. 7. Extrā hanc civitātem urbēs mūrīs carēbant. 8. Cēterae civitatēs in potestātem populī Rōmānī venire cupiēbant. 9. Hostēs arma nāvisque iam trādiderant.

188. 1. While these things were going on<sup>3</sup> in the city, the ships of the enemy were seen to be approaching. 2. On account of fear the enemy had suddenly deserted the fleet. 3. They were already outside of the city, and were marching<sup>4</sup> to the river. 4. The other vessels of this kind were captured. 5. For this reason he desired to retain his former power. 6. He is remarkable both in body and in mind. 7. Desire for<sup>5</sup> power and for a great name brought the man into this danger. 8. They hastened thither by forced<sup>6</sup> marches. 9. After the city was taken, the arms were surrendered.

---

<sup>1</sup> *The enemy*, as a military term, is generally expressed in Latin by the plural of *hostis*.    <sup>2</sup> *had made a march*, that is *had marched*.

<sup>3</sup> See section 162, sentence 4.

<sup>4</sup> See section 187, sentence 4.

<sup>5</sup> See page 54, foot-note 4.

<sup>6</sup> Use *magnus*, *great*.



ROMAN STANDARDS

## LESSON XXVIII

189. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns  
with Genitive Plural in *ium*

	<b>Insigne</b> <i>decoration</i>	<b>animal</b> <i>animal</i>	<b>calcar</b> <i>spur</i>	
	SINGULAR			
NOM.	<i>insigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	ENDINGS <b>e or none</b>
GEN.	<i>insignis</i>	<i>animālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<b>is</b>
DAT.	<i>insigni</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<b>ī</b>
ACC.	<i>insigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<b>e or none</b>
ABL.	<i>insigni</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<b>ī</b>
	PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>insignia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<b>ia</b>
GEN.	<i>insignium</i>	<i>animālīum</i>	<i>calcārīum</i>	<b>ium</b>
DAT.	<i>insignibus</i>	<i>animālībus</i>	<i>calcārībus</i>	<b>ibus</b>
ACC.	<i>insignia</i>	<i>animālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<b>ia</b>
ABL.	<i>insignibus</i>	<i>animālībus</i>	<i>calcārībus</i>	<b>ibus</b>

190. **Case-Endings.** — In what cases do the endings of these words differ from those of *hostis*? From those of *nōmen*?

191. **Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*.** — The following classes of third-declension nouns have their genitive plural in *ium*: —

1. Masculine and feminine nouns having no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative<sup>1</sup>: *hostis*, *hostis*.

2. Masculine and feminine nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular: *urbs*, *urbis*; *mōns*, *montis*.

3. Neuter nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: *insigne*, *animal*, *calcar*.

<sup>1</sup> *Pater* is an exception. See section 459.

## 192.

## Vocabulary

animal, animālis, n., *animal*.

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *disaster*.

calcar, calcāris, n., *spur*.

civis, civis,<sup>1</sup> m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen*. [civitas].

insigne, insignis, n., *decoration*; insignia (pl.), *insignia*.

mare, maris, n., *sea*. *marine*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.

mors, mortis, f., *death*. *mortal*.

nihil, indeclinable noun, n., *nothing*. *annihilate*.

vis, vis,<sup>2</sup> f., *force, violence*; virēs (pl.), *strength*.

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*. *intervene*.

ita, adv., *in this way, thus, so*. [is].

primum, adv., *first*. [primus].

premō, premere, pressi, pressum, *press, press hard, overwhelm*.

suscipiō, suscipere, suscipi, susceptum, *undertake*. [sub + capiō].

## Exercises

## 193. Decline civis, mōns, mors, and vis.

194. 1. In hōc marī Rōmānī magnam calamitātem accēpērunt.<sup>3</sup> 2. Ea civitās illius pristinae calamitātis memoriā semper retinēbit. 3. Nihil sine auxiliō civium faciet. 4. Multae nāvēs dē hāc classe vī maris premuntur. 5. Hostēs primum cōpiās ab oppidō dēdūxērunt, deinde bellum suscēpērunt. 6. Nihil nisi haec calcāria invēni. 7. Cētera animālia, quae in montibus nōn capta erant, fugā mortem vitāvērunt. 8. Virēs eōrum hominum quī eō vēnerant integrae erant. 9. Sī cupis, ita faciam. 10. Cōnsuli haec insignia imperī ā civibus dabantur.

195. 1. Concerning the death of those who had undertaken the war he spoke thus. 2. First we took by force the towns which are between the mountains and the sea. 3. The soldiers' desire for<sup>4</sup> plunder was the cause of the disaster. 4. The citizens were ready to desert their leaders and sur-

<sup>1</sup> The ablative singular is *cive* or *civi*. Compare *nāvis*.

<sup>2</sup> Learn the declension of this word, which is irregular (section 463).

<sup>3</sup> *received*, that is *suffered*.

<sup>4</sup> See page 54, foot-note 4.

render the city. 5. Outside of the city we were already pressed hard by the enemy's troops. 6. He had received these decorations from the commander. 7. I said nothing about the spurs which I had found among the Gauls. 8. You desired to undertake the war, but the fear of disaster prevented.

## LESSON XXIX

**196. Personal Pronouns.** — Learn the declension of *ego, I*, and *tū, you* (section 481).

**197. Personal Use of *is*.** — Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person, but the demonstrative *is* is used instead. When so used, it should be translated as follows: —

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>is, he.</i>	<i>ea, she.</i>	<i>id, it.</i>
GEN.	<i>ēius, his.</i>	<i>ēius, her.</i>	<i>ēius, its.</i>
DAT.	<i>eī, him.</i>	<i>eī, her.</i>	<i>eī, it.</i>
ACC.	<i>eum, him.</i>	<i>eam, her.</i>	<i>id, it.</i>
ABL.	<i>eō, him.</i>	<i>eā, her.</i>	<i>eō, it.</i>
	PLURAL		
NOM.	<i>iī or eī, they.</i>	<i>eaē, they.</i>	<i>ea, they.</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrum, their.</i>	<i>eārum, their.</i>	<i>eōrum, their.</i>
DAT.	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>
ACC.	<i>eōs, them.</i>	<i>eās, them.</i>	<i>ea, them.</i>
ABL.	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>	<i>iīs or eīs, them.</i>

**198. Omission of Subject.** — The nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast: *tū es liber, ego sum servus, you are free, I am a slave*. Otherwise the subject is sufficiently indicated by the personal ending of the verb: *sum servus, I am a slave; pugnābātis, you were fighting*.

**199. Possessive Adjectives.**—Corresponding to the personal pronouns, there are four possessive adjectives: *meus*, *my*; *noster*, *our*; *tuus*, *your* (of a single possessor); *vester*, *your* (of more than one possessor). The possessives are adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined like *bonus* and *integer*. Like other adjectives, they agree in gender, number,<sup>1</sup> and case with the noun they modify. They normally follow the noun.

The possessive adjectives are generally used only for emphasis or contrast, or where the meaning would not be clear without them: *patrem tuum vidit*, *he saw your father*.

**200.****Vocabulary**

*ego*, *I*; *nōs* (pl.), *we*. *egotist*.

*meus*, *my*, *mine*.

*noster*, *our*, *ours*.

*tū*, *you*; *vōs* (pl.), *you*.

*tuus*, *your*, *yours*.

*vester*, *your*, *yours*.

*multitūdō*, *multitūdinis*, f., *great number*, *number*. [*multus*].

*pars*, *partis*, f., *part*.

*salūs*, *salūtis*, f., *safety*. *salutary*.

*etiā*, adv., *even*. [*et + iam*].

*nōn iam*, *no longer*.

*reddō*, *reddere*, *reddidī*, *redditum*, *give back*, *restore*. [*dō*].

*remittō*, *remittere*, *remisī*, *remissum*, *send back*, *return*. [*mittō*].

*trādūcō*, *trādūcere*, *trādūxī*, *trāductum*, *lead across*, *bring over*. [*dūcō*].

**Exercises**

**201.** Decline together *pars nostra*, *cōnsilium tuum*, *ager noster*, *pater vester*, and *opus meum*.

**202.** 1. *Primum ā nōbis*, *deinde ā cēteris civitatibus bellum susceptum est*. 2. *Vī maris terrēbāmur*, *atque etiam mortem expectābāmus*. 3. *Dux ā classe revocātus est*, *neque ad eam*<sup>2</sup> *postea remissus est*. 4. *Magnam multitūdinem*

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the number of a possessive adjective is not determined by the number of possessors denoted by it, but by the number of the noun which it modifies: *amicus noster*, *our friend*; *amīcī mei*, *my friends*.

<sup>2</sup> We say *it*, but the Latin has *eam*, *her*, because *classis* is feminine.

civium meōrum in insulam vestram trādūcam. 5. Nostri<sup>1</sup> in hāc montium parte ā multitudīne hostium iam premuntur. 6. Lēgātī ad eum missī erant, primī<sup>1</sup> civitātis. 7. Ea calcāria quae accēpisti mihi reddēs. 8. Inter eōs erat nihil amicitiae.<sup>2</sup> 9. Magna pars hostium post ēius mortem fugā salūtem petiit.

**203.** 1. The consul is anxious about the safety of the citizens. 2. A large part of the city had already been deserted, but nothing was found there by our men.<sup>3</sup> 3. Thither he brought the soldiers; then he stationed them outside of the city. 4. I have brought over the rest of<sup>4</sup> my troops, and shall leave them in your camp. 5. Their ships will not be sent back to us; for there is great danger in our sea. 6. After this disaster nothing of the former power was restored to the state. 7. I shall surrender to you even these insignia of power; for I am no longer your consul. 8. The strength of these animals is remarkable. 9. He ought not thus to wound you, who are<sup>5</sup> his friends and love<sup>5</sup> him.

## THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Clārum iam erat nōmen urbis Rōmae, tamen bellum extrā Italiam nōn gestum erat. Primum in Siciliā bellum contrā Poenōs ā Rōmānis susceptum est. Eō Rōmāni magnās cōpiās trādūxērunt ac rēgem Syrācūsārum vicērunt et Poenōs,

<sup>1</sup> The masculine plural of an adjective is often used as a substantive (that is, with the construction of a noun), and may then generally be translated with *men*: *nostri*, *our men*; *primī*, *the first men*. Compare English *the poor*.

<sup>2</sup> *nothing of friendship*, that is *no friendship*.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> See section 154, sentence 2.

<sup>5</sup> Notice that a verb which has a relative pronoun for its subject agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

quī magnam partem ēius insulae occupāverant. Tum primum Rōmānī in marī pugnāvērunt. Duilius cōsul multās nāvīs cēpit aut dēlēvit et magnum hostium numerum occidit. Quā<sup>1</sup> victōriā animus Rōmānōrum auctus est.

5 Post paucōs annōs in Āfricam cōpiaie Rōmānōrum missae sunt. Hamilcar, Karthāginiēnsium dux, quī magnum numerum nāvium coēgerat, cum classe Rōmānā pugnāvit atque fugātus est. Ubi Rōmānī in Āfricam vēnērunt, multis proeliis Karthāginiēnsis vicērunt,<sup>2</sup> multa oppida conciliāvērunt.  
10 Tandem Karthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānis petiērunt. Ubi M. Atilius Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, pācem cum iis nōn fēcit, auxilium ā Graecis petiērunt. Graeci Xanthippum mīserunt, quī Rēgulum magnō proeliō vicit. Multi Rōmāni occisī sunt, Rēgulus captus est.

15 Postea tamen fortuna Karthāginiēnsis dēseruit. Itaque hī Rēgulum cum lēgātis dē pāce et dē iis captivis quōs Rōmāni retinēbant ad urbem Rōmam mīserunt. Rēgulus ad patrēs vocātus est et ita dixit: “Si pācem faciētis et Poenis captivōs reddētis, ego hāc in urbe manēbō; si captivōs retinēbitis,  
20 Poeni mē postulābunt. Sic cōstitutum est. Ego autem in potestātem hostium venī, quā dē causā nōn iam civis Rōmānus sum. Poeni calamitāte periculōque premuntur, dē victōriā dēspērānt, nihil nisi pācem ac salutē cōgitant. Itaque nōn pācem cum iis facere captivōsque reddere, sed mē ad eōs  
25 remittere et bellum renovāre dēbētis.” Haec sententia superāvit. Captivī retenti sunt. Rēgulus ad hostis remissus est, id quod<sup>3</sup> postulāverat, ac suppliciis occisus est. Haec fuit clāra illa Rēguli mors.

<sup>1</sup> Do not translate literally *by which*, but *by this*. Latin often uses the relative pronoun to introduce a sentence, where a demonstrative or personal pronoun is required in English.

<sup>2</sup> English usage often requires *and* where no conjunction is used in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> *that which*, that is *as*.

Tandem ubi classis ā Rōmānis magnō proeliō dēlēta est, Poenī iterum pācem petiērunt, quae iis data est. Rōmānis captīvōs reddidērunt ac Siciliam cēterāsque insulās quae inter Italiam et Siciliam sunt trādiderunt.

## LESSON XXX

**204. Reflexive Pronoun.**— Learn the declension of **sui**, *self* (section 482).

Notice that **sui** has no nominative, and that the same forms are used for all genders and for both numbers.

**205. Intensive Pronoun.**— Learn the declension of **ipse**, *self* (section 484).

Notice that **ipse** is declined like **ille** and **iste**, except for the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

## 206.

## Vocabulary

<b>sui</b> , <i>self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them.</i>	<b>frāter</b> , <b>frātris</b> , <sup>1</sup> m., <i>brother. fraternal.</i>
<b>suus</b> , poss. adj., <i>his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).</i>	<b>lēgātiō</b> , <b>lēgātiōnis</b> , f., <i>embassy. [lēgātus].</i>
<b>ipse</b> , <i>self; myself, you self, himself, herself, itself, etc.; sometimes very.</i>	<b>legiō</b> , <b>legiōnis</b> , f., <i>legion, a division of the Roman army.</i>
<b>adolēscēns</b> , <b>adolēscētis</b> , m., <i>young man, youth. adolescence.</i>	<b>obses</b> , <b>obsidis</b> , m., <i>hostage.</i>
<b>auctōritās</b> , <b>auctōritātis</b> , f., <i>influence, authority.</i>	<b>respōsum</b> , -ī, n., <i>reply, answer. responsible.</i>
<b>dīmittō</b> , <b>dīmittere</b> , <b>dīmīsī</b> , <b>dīmīssum</b> , <i>send about; also send away, dismiss. [mittō].</i>	<b>interim</b> , adv., <i>in the meantime, meanwhile. [inter].</i>
<b>perturbō</b> , <b>perturbāre</b> , <b>perturbāvī</b> , <b>perturbātum</b> , <i>throw into confusion. perturbation.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> **Frāter**, like **pater**, has the genitive plural in **um**.

## Exercises

207. 1. Hūius legiōnis militēs, quōrum virēs nōn iam integrae erant, ab hostibus premēbantur; tamen sē dēfendēbant.  
 2. Etiam nōs ipsae calamitāte vestrā perturbātae sumus.  
 3. Itaque eius frāter lēgātiōnem ā sē sine respōnsō dīmisit.  
 4. Interim adulēscēns dē frātre suō eiusque salūte timēbat.  
 5. Tūne ipse hanc lēgātiōnem suscipiēs? 6. Cēterōs lēgātōs dīmittet, mē autem sēcum<sup>1</sup> retinēbit. 7. Interim eam ipsam legiōnem quam sēcum habēbat ad montem dūxit.  
 8. Obsidēs quī redditi erant magnae auctōritātis inter suōs civis erant. 9. Ego ipse tibi haec calcāria dō. 10. Ipse mē<sup>2</sup> ab illis animālibus ita dēfendī.

208. Use of Reflexive Pronoun.— Notice that **sē** in sentence 1 denotes the same persons as **militēs**, and that **sē** in sentence 3 denotes the same person as **frāter**. The reflexive pronoun is regularly used, instead of **is**, to refer to a subject in the third person. In sentence 3, for example, **sē** must be translated *him*, as **eō** would be; but if **eō** had been used, it would refer to the person denoted by **eius**, not to **frāter**.

209. Use of Intensive Pronoun.— Notice that **ipsae** in sentence 2 emphasizes, or intensifies, **nōs** (*we ourselves*); that **ipsam** in sentence 7 emphasizes **legiōnem** (*that legion itself, that very legion*); and that **ipse** in sentence 10 emphasizes the unexpressed subject (*I myself*).

The English words *himself, herself, itself, themselves* are sometimes reflexive and sometimes intensive; and their Latin equivalent is therefore sometimes **suī** and sometimes **ipse**.

210. Use of **suus**.— Notice that **suō** and **eius** in sentence 4 are both translated *his*; but that **suō** refers to **adulēscēns**, the subject of

<sup>1</sup> Translate as if it were **cum sē**. When the preposition **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it follows and is joined to the pronoun.

<sup>2</sup> *I myself defended me, that is I defended myself.*

the sentence, while *ēius* refers to *frātre*. *Suus* is the possessive adjective corresponding to the reflexive pronoun *sui*.

211. 1. By his influence he won over to himself<sup>1</sup> a great number of the young men and prevented their insurrection. 2. First they armed themselves against those states that were near. 3. Then I sent away from me this very embassy. 4. Meanwhile through<sup>2</sup> his influence the hostages were sent back into their own country. 5. The soldiers whom I was bringing over with<sup>3</sup> me were frightened by the violence of the sea. 6. Our centurions themselves will be thrown into confusion by the great number<sup>4</sup> and the courage of the enemy. 7. The soldiers of this legion are leaving the decorations which they have received. 8. I have heard nothing concerning the reply which your brother gave to the embassy at that time. 9. After the death of their leader they had made peace with us.

### LESSON XXXI

#### 212. Third Declension: Adjectives of Three Endings

Learn the declension of *acer*, *sharp* (section 466).

Adjectives of the third declension are regularly declined like nouns with genitive plural in *ium*, but they have *i* in the ablative singular in all genders.

Notice that the nominative singular of *acer* has a different ending in each of the three genders.

#### 213. Third Declension: Adjectives of Two Endings

Learn the declension of *omnis*, *all* (section 467).

Notice that the nominative singular of *omnis* has the same ending in the masculine and feminine genders.

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> See page 64, foot-note 1.

<sup>3</sup> See section 106.

<sup>4</sup> Use *multitūdō*.

**214. Third Declension: Adjectives of One Ending**

Learn the declension of **ingēns**, *enormous* (section 468).

Notice that the nominative singular of **ingēns** has the same ending in all three genders.

**215.****Vocabulary**

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**,<sup>1</sup> *sharp*; also *active*.

*acid*.

**audāx**, **audācis**,<sup>1</sup> *bold, daring*. *audacity*.

**ingēns**, **ingentis**, *enormous, great*.

**nōbillis**, **nōbile**, *well-known*; also of *noble birth, noble*.

**omnis**, **omne**, *all*. *omnipotent*.

**eques**, **equitis**, *m., horseman*;

**equitēs** (pl.), *cavalry*. [**equus**].

**pedes**, **peditis**, *m., foot-soldier*;

**peditēs** (pl.), *infantry*. *pedestrian*.

**fortiter**, *adv., bravely*. *fortitude*.

**interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectum**, *put to death, kill*. [**faciō**].

**resistō**, **resistere**, **restitī**, *resist*.

**Exercises**

**216.** Decline together **hoc audāx cōnsilium**; **homō nōbillis**; **hostis tuus ācer**; and **tū, fēmina nōbillis**.

**217.** 1. Ego quidem ipse pācem vōbīscum faciam. 2. Lēgātī omnēs quī ad nōs vērunt virī bonī fuērunt ac nōbillēs. 3. Lēgātīōnī quae ad Hannibalem ā Rōmānīs missa erat respōsum nōn datum est. 4. Postquam Hannibal cum omnibus suis cōpiīs montis superāvit,<sup>2</sup> Rōmānī eius cōnsiliīs ācribus audācibusque terrēbantur. 5. Rōmānī nōn iam legiōnēs suās in Āfricam trādūcere parābant, sed etiam suam patriam portāsque Rōmae ipsius dēfendere cōgēbantur. 6. Paucōs adulēscentis audācis ē numerō equitum dēlēgerat, iisque cōnsilia sua dēmōnstrābat. 7. Hae legiōnēs multitudīne hostium

<sup>1</sup> Hereafter all the forms of the nominative singular of adjectives will be given in the vocabularies. Of adjectives of one ending, the nominative and the genitive singular will be given.

<sup>2</sup> *crossed*.

perturbābantur atque cum omnibus equitibus fugā salūtem petēbant. 8. Reliquī peditēs fortiter resistēbant neque suspiciōnem fugae dabant. 9. Nūntiī quī in omnis partis silvae dīmissi erant ā barbaris comprehēnsi<sup>1</sup> interfectique sunt.

**218.** 1. You resisted long and bravely, but were defeated by an active consul's influence. 2. The cavalry and a part of the infantry which he had brought over with him he sent back to his brother. 3. After this battle, in which an enormous number of Romans had been killed, a few young men of noble birth determined to desert Italy. 4. Meanwhile you yourself had given back all the hostages to your allies. 5. Our men<sup>2</sup> saved themselves and their country by this daring plan. 6. All were men of active mind and uncommon bravery.

## LESSON XXXII

**219. Participles.** — Learn the participles of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **audiō**, and **capiō**, including the gerundive, which is sometimes called the future passive participle (sections 489, 490, 491).

Learn also the future participle of **sum** (section 493).

The present participle and the gerundive are formed from the present stem of the verb, and have the endings **ns** and **ndus** respectively. For the quantity of the vowels before these endings, see section 4.

The neuter nominative singular of the perfect participle is learned as one of the principal parts of the verb. The future participle may usually be obtained from the perfect participle by changing **us** to **ūrus**.

<sup>1</sup> **sunt** goes with **comprehēnsi** as well as with **interfecti**.

<sup>2</sup> See page 61, foot-note 1.

Notice that Latin has no perfect active participle and no present passive participle.

**220. Declension of Participles.**—Present participles are declined like *ingēns*, except that they have *e* in the ablative singular (section 470). All other participles are declined like *bonus*.

### 221. Future Active Participle and Gerundive with *sum*

The future active participle is used with a form of *sum* to represent an action as about to occur or intended: *monitūrus est*, *he is about to advise, is going to advise, is intending to advise*.

The gerundive is used with a form of *sum* to represent an action as necessary or proper: *monendus est*, *he is to be advised, must be advised, ought to be advised*.

### 222.

### Vocabulary

*oppugnātiō*, *oppugnātiōnis*, f., *attack*, *quoque*, adv., *also*.  
*siege*. [*oppugnō*]. *statim*, adv., *immediately, at once*,  
*ferē*, adv., *almost*. *instantly*.

*cōsulō*, *cōsulere*, *cōsului*, *cōsultum*, with dat., *look out for, consult*.  
 [*cōsiliū*].

*imperō*, *imperāre*, *imperāvī*, *imperātum*, with dat., *command, rule*. [*imperium*].

*noceō*, *nocēre*, *nocuī*, *nocitum*, with dat., *do harm to, injure*. *innocent*.

*persuādēō*, *persuādēre*, *persuāsī*, *persuāsūm*, with dat., *persuade*.

*studeō*, *studēre*, *studuī*, with dat., *be eager for, be devoted to*. *student*.

### Exercises

223. 1. *Nōs ipsī nostrīs cupiditātibus (see 224) imperāre dēbēmus*. 2. *Hannibal dux factus sociis Rōmānōrum nocitūrus erat*. 3. *Litterae dē hāc oppugnātiōne acceptae causa ingentis timōris erant*. 4. *Rōmānī suae salūtī cōsulentēs sociōs dēseruerant*. 5. *Gallī Rōmānōs ab Hannibale victōs*

dēseruērunt; nam amicitiae Karthāginiēnsium semper studēbant. 6. Hannibalis frāter fortiter pugnāns interfectus est. 7. Interim militēs eius legiōnis hostibus resistēbant. 8. Barbari timōre perturbāti lēgatiōnēs in omnis ferē partis Āfricae dimisērunt. 9. Nisi tibi quoque persuāserō,<sup>1</sup> meis cōsiliis audācibus statim dēsistam. 10. Nihil dē auctōritāte est dicendum.

**224. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** — The dative *cupiditatibus* in sentence 1 is governed by *imperāre*, an intransitive verb. In the English expression *to rule our desires* the verb is transitive, and *desires* is its direct object; but we may translate *imperāre* intransitively (*rule over our desires*). So *hostibus resistēbant* in sentence 7 is naturally translated *were resisting the enemy*, but it is closer to the literal meaning to say *were standing against the enemy*; and *tibi persuāserō* in sentence 9 means literally *make (something) agreeable to you*.

Note the other intransitive verbs which govern a dative in the Latin sentences.

**225. Agreement of Participle.** — Notice that the participles in the sentences above, like adjectives, agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify.

**226. Translation of Participles.** — A literal translation of the first clause of sentence 5 (*the Gauls deserted the Romans defeated by Hannibal*) does not express the thought in idiomatic English. We must say *the Gauls deserted the Romans after they had been defeated by Hannibal*, or *because they had been defeated*; or *the Gauls deserted the Romans, who had been defeated by Hannibal*. A present or perfect participle is often best translated by a clause.

**227.** 1. A sharp winter often injures the trees. 2. Great forces of cavalry and infantry collected from Africa were led into Italy. 3. Those young men of noble birth are about

---

<sup>1</sup> See section 155.

to do harm both to themselves and to their country. 4. Being eager for power, they look out for their own fortunes, not for their country. 5. They had persuaded almost<sup>1</sup> all their friends also.<sup>2</sup> 6. We were about to give this answer to those<sup>3</sup> resisting. 7. Though<sup>4</sup> deserted by all our allies, we shall look out for our safety and resist the attack. 8. After hostages had been given, the siege was immediately abandoned. 9. Having been defeated by the barbarians, the Romans no longer rule these states.

## LESSON XXXIII

228.

## Fourth Declension

	<b>exercitus</b> <i>army</i>		<b>cornū</b> <i>horn</i>
		SINGULAR	
		ENDINGS	ENDINGS
NOM.	<b>exercitus</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>cornū</b> <b>ū</b>
GEN.	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b> <b>ūs</b>
DAT.	<b>exercituī</b>	<b>uī</b>	<b>cornū</b> <b>ū</b>
ACC.	<b>exercitum</b>	<b>um</b>	<b>cornū</b> <b>ū</b>
ABL.	<b>exercitū</b>	<b>ū</b>	<b>cornū</b> <b>ū</b>
		PLURAL	
NOM.	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>cornua</b> <b>ua</b>
GEN.	<b>exercituum</b>	<b>uum</b>	<b>cornuum</b> <b>uum</b>
DAT.	<b>exercitibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b> <b>ibus</b>
ACC.	<b>exercitūs</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>cornua</b> <b>ua</b>
ABL.	<b>exercitibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b> <b>ibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> *Ferē* usually follows the word it modifies.

<sup>2</sup> *Quoque*, like *quidem*, follows the word it modifies.

<sup>3</sup> Omit. We may say in Latin *the resisting*, using the participle as a substantive. Compare English *the living*, and see page 61, foot-note 1.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

**229. Gender.** — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in **us** are regularly masculine; those ending in **ū** are neuter.

**Domus**, *home*, and **manus**, *hand*, are feminine.

**230.****Vocabulary**

- cornū, -ūs, n., *horn*; also *wing* (of an army). bene, adv., *well, successfully*. [bonus].  
 dēditō, dēditōnis, f., *surrender*. inde, adv., *from there*.  
 [dē + dō]. numquam, adv., *never*.  
 exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; also *band, body, manual*.  
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, *bring about, accomplish, complete*. [ex + faciō].  
 iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.

**Exercises**

**231.** Decline together **manus mea, exercitus clārus, illud ingēns cornū**.

**232.** 1. Rōmāni Hannibalem per lēgātōs iussērunt statim oppugnātiōne dēsistere exercitumque ab urbe dēducere. 2. Bellum in Italiā ab eō bene gestum est. 3. Magnae manūs equitum in omnīs partis<sup>1</sup> dimissae civitātēs bellō studentis terruērunt. 4. Barbari legiōnibus Rōmānis fortiter resistent ac sē armīs dēfendent. 5. Ille vir inter omnīs civis nōbilis primus ferē est virtūte et cōnsiliō. 6. Ab<sup>2</sup> hāc parte animālia cornibus equōs nostrōs timōre perturbātōs interficiēbant. 7. Ab illō quoque cornū exercitus hostium in manibus nostris<sup>3</sup> visus est. 8. Ingentem praedam ex illā urbe iam

<sup>1</sup> into all parts, that is in all directions. Pars is often best translated by *direction* or *side*.

<sup>2</sup> on this side. Ab is often used in expressions denoting position, and it may then be translated *in* or *on*.

<sup>3</sup> in our hands, that is close upon us.

in dēditionem acceptā in Italiam statim misit. 9. Cēteri<sup>1</sup> cupientēs lēgātō persuādere eumque ab audāci cōnsiliō prohibere nihil tamen effēcērunt. 10. Lēgāti inde ad eum missi numquam retinēbantur.

**233.** 1. The Roman nation did not always look out for the safety of the states which it ruled. 2. The city is bravely defended by an active and daring consul; you will never bring about a surrender by force. 3. He ordered his men<sup>2</sup> to withdraw from the battle at once; for he was accomplishing nothing. 4. With the horn which he had in his hand he gave the signal to the army. 5. The infantry were ordered<sup>3</sup> to abandon the attack, and marched from there to the river. 6. We received well those who were about to injure us. 7. The ships already completed were sent in all directions.

## THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Post paucōs annōs Pūnicum bellum per Hannibalem, Karthāginiēnsium ducem, est renovātum. Quī<sup>4</sup> tum adlēcēns Saguntum, Hispāniae oppidum, quod Rōmānis erat amicum, oppugnāvit. Eum Rōmāni per lēgātōs oppugnātiōne statim dēsistere iussērunt. Quōs lēgātōs Hannibal sine respōnsō dimisit. Lēgātiō in Āfricam dē iniuriis sociōrum missa ibi quoque nihil effēcit; nam Karthāginiēnsēs bellō studēbant. Dum lēgātiōnēs ā Rōmānis mittuntur, Saguntum ab Hannibale captum est cum magnā praedā. Quod ubi<sup>5</sup> Rōmānis nūntiātum est, urbs timōre est perturbāta. Civēs hostem in Italiā atque iam ad portās Rōmae vidēre

<sup>1</sup> Used as a substantive, *the others*.

<sup>2</sup> Omit.

<sup>3</sup> Use a participle (*having been ordered to abandon the attack marched*).

<sup>4</sup> *he*. See page 62, foot-note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *when this*. Quod has no single word as its antecedent, but refers to the substance of the preceding sentence, namely the capture of Saguntum.

vidēbantur.<sup>1</sup> Magnae cōpiae coāctae P. Cornēliō Scipiōni et Ti.<sup>2</sup> Semprōniō Longō cōsulibus datae sunt.

Hannibal primum Pŷrēnaeōs montis, deinde Alpīs cum peditibus, equitibus, elephantisque superāvit. Cornēlium ad Ticinum, Semprōnium ad Trebiam vicit. Interim multās 5 Galliae civitatēs, quae Rōmānōs dēseruerant, in amicitiam accēpit. Postea Flāminius cōsul in proeliō ad Trasumenum interfectus est cōpiaeque eius delētae sunt. Diū Q.<sup>3</sup> Fabius Maximus, vir ēgregii cōsili, cui magna potestās data erat, sine pugnā Hannibalem impediēbat ac patriam ex 10 periculō servābat. Tandem Rōmāni ad Cannās in Āpūliā proeliō superāti magnam calamitātem iterum accēpērunt. Tamen pācem numquam cōgitāvērunt. Novus exercitus coāctus est, etiam puerī et servī armāti sunt.

Interim in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, nōmine Hasdrubal, 15 qui ibi māserat cum magnis cōpiis, ā Scipiōnibus, Rōmānis ducibus, victus est. Hī ipsi Scipiōnēs post paucōs annōs victi interfectique sunt. M. Claudius Mārcellus in Campāniā bellum cum Hannibale bene gessit. Deinde magnam partem insulae Siciliae cēpit, quam Poenī occupāverant; Syrācūsās 20 quoque, nōbilem urbem, expugnāvit et ingentem praedam inde in Italiam misit. Omnis ferē reliquās civitatēs in dēditionem accēpit.

In Hispāniā prō ducibus qui interfecti erant P. Cornēlius Scipiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē prīmus, missus est. 25 Qui etiam puer<sup>4</sup> in pugnā ad Ticinum patrem suum virtūte servāverat. Post calamitātem Cannēnsē multōs nōbilis adulēscentis Italiam dēserere cupientis prohibuerat. In Hispāniā missus Karthāginem Novam cēpit, quā in urbe arma et pecūniā Poenī habēbant, obsidēs quoque nōbilis, quōs ab 30

<sup>1</sup> *seemed*, a common meaning of the passive of *videō*.

<sup>2</sup> The abbreviation for *Tiberius*.

<sup>3</sup> The abbreviation for *Quintus*.

<sup>4</sup> *even as a boy, while still a boy*.

Hispānis accēperant. Hōs obsidēs Scīpiō reddidit. Ita omnis ferē Hispāniac civitatēs sibi conciliāvit. Hasdrubal, quī ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Italiam vocātus erat, ad Sēnam fortiter pugnāns occisus est.

- 5 Tandem Scīpiō cōsul creatus in Āfricam est missus, ibique Poenōs sociōsque eōrum vicit. Itaque Hannibal in Africam ab iis revocātus est, atque Italia timōre belli liberāta est. Ad Zamam Scīpiō Hannibalem ipsum vicit. Post hoc proelium pāx cum Karthāginiēnsibus facta est.

## LESSON XXXIV

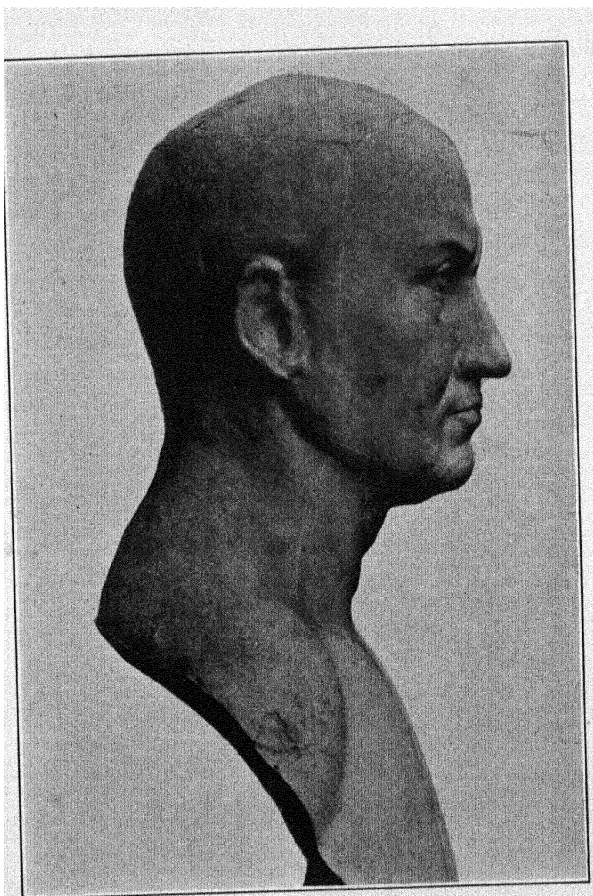
## 234.

## Fifth Declension

	<b>diēs</b> <i>day</i>	<b>rēs</b> <i>thing</i>	
			SINGULAR
NOM.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>ēī or eī</b>
DAT.	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>ēī or eī</b>
ACC.	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>	<b>em</b>
ABL.	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>	<b>ē</b>
			PLURAL
NOM.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>ērum</b>
DAT.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>ēbus</b>
ACC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>ēbus</b>

**235. Case-Endings.** — The genitive and the dative singular of the fifth declension have **ēī** after a vowel, **eī** after a consonant.

**236. Gender.** — Nouns of the fifth declension are regularly feminine, but **diēs** is usually masculine.



SCIPIO



## 237.

## Vocabulary

- diēs, -ēī, m., *day*. *diary*. nēmō, dat. nēmīnī, acc. nēmīnem,<sup>1</sup>  
 equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*. [eques]. m. and f., *no one*.  
 fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, trustworthiness*; rēs, -eī, f., *thing, affair, matter*. *real*.  
 also *pledge, protection*. *fidelity*. ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for*.  
 occurrō, occurrere, occurrī or occurri, occursum, with dat., *run against*,  
*meet*. *occurrence*.  
 praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, with dat., *put in command of*.  
 [faciō].  
 praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitum or praestātum. with dat., *stand*  
*before, surpass*.  
 succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, with dat., *take the place of, succeed*.  
 [excēdō].

238. **Compound Verbs.** — We have seen that verbs are often combined with prepositions: *dē-dūcō*, *lead down*. Many prepositions and verbs appear in compounds with changes in spelling: *oc-currō* instead of *ob-currō*, *suc-cēdō* instead of *sub-cēdō*, *prae-ficiō* instead of *prae-faciō*, *ac-cipiō* instead of *ad-capiō*.

## Exercises

239. Decline together *haec omnis rēs, idem diēs*.

240. 1. Nēmō Hannibalī (*see 241*) virtūte praestābat.  
 2. Itaque Hannibal duci interfectō successit. 3. Ubi rēgi occurrit, cūius suspiciō vitanda erat, multa<sup>2</sup> dē fidē suā dixit.  
 4. Quam ob causam rēx eum nāvibus quoque praefēcit.  
 5. Lēgātī Rōmānōrum ad hunc rēgem missī Hannibalem comprehēnsūrī erant. 6. Dux dēditiōnī studēns omnibus ferē cīvibus persuāserat. 7. Sī mihi hanc fidem dederis,

<sup>1</sup> The genitive and ablative are not used.

<sup>2</sup> *said many things*, that is *spoke much*. The neuter plural of an adjective is often used as a substantive, and is then generally to be translated with *things*. Compare English *the useful*, and see page 61, foot-note 1.

tibi tuisque rēbus cōsulam. 8. Equitēs in omnis partis dimittunt atque omnia<sup>1</sup> efficiunt quae cupivērunt. 9. Imperābimus quidem iīs quōs vicimus, captivīs tamen nōn nocēbimus. 10. Huic rei ad diem mortis numquam studēre dēstitit. 11. Hostēs nostrō exercituī numerō militum praestābant. 12. Quam ob rem equitātus ab hōc cornū magnā tēlōrum multitudīne premēbātur.

**241. Dative with Compound Verbs.** — The dative **Hannibalī** in sentence 1 is governed by **praestābat**. In the English translation *surpassed Hannibal* the verb is transitive, and *Hannibal* is its direct object; but **praestābat** is intransitive, and the literal meaning is *stood before Hannibal*. In sentence 4 **prae** is combined with the transitive verb **faciō**, and therefore a direct object is required in addition to the dative (*put him in command of the ships*).

Note the other compound verbs which govern a dative in the Latin sentences.

**242.** 1. After a few days the fleet was sent from there. 2. If you give me your pledge, I will put you in command of a body of horsemen. 3. Having been put in command of all the cavalry, he hastened at once to meet the enemy. 4. After his son succeeded to the throne, things were carried on well. 5. I have met no one on this side of the camp. 6. After the first day of the siege the legions had been ordered to take the place of the cavalry. 7. Hannibal surpassed the other leaders in all these things. 8. He always desired to injure the Romans. 9. The Roman ambassadors were intending to increase the king's suspicions concerning Hannibal's trustworthiness.

---

<sup>1</sup> *all things, that is everything.*

## LESSON XXXV

**243. Vocative Case.**—The person or thing addressed is denoted by the vocative. Since this case generally does not have a distinct form, it has not been included in the paradigms. The vocative and nominative are always the same in the plural; in the singular they differ only in the second declension, as follows:—

Nouns in **us** and the masculine of adjectives in **us** have **e** in the vocative: **quid facis, bone serve?** *what are you doing, good slave?*

**Filius** and proper nouns ending in **ius** have **i** in the vocative: **Ascani, fili.** The accent falls on the penult, even when this is short: **As-ca'-ni.** See section 76.

The masculine of **meus** has **mī** as its vocative.

**244. Review of Case-Endings.**—Review the case-endings of all the declensions (sections 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462), and make a table showing all the endings for each case together: genitive singular, **ae, i, is, ūs, ēi** or **eī**, *etc.*

Which two cases are the same in the plural in every declension? In which declension are the dative and ablative singular the same? Which two cases are always the same in the neuter? In which declensions are the nominative and accusative plural of masculine and feminine nouns the same? In which declensions are the genitive and dative singular the same? The genitive singular and nominative plural? In which declension is the nominative plural the same as the nominative singular? How do the nominative and ablative singular of the first declension differ? The nominative and genitive singular masculine of the fourth declension?

## 245.

## Vocabulary

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

Iuppiter, gen. Iovis, m., *Jupiter* or *Jove*, king of the gods.

ops, opis, f., *aid*; opēs (pl.), *resources*. *opulent*.

sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice*.

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound*. [vulnerō].

certus, -a, -um, *definite, certain*.

divinus, -a, -um, *divine, superhuman*. [deus].

inquit, used in quoting, *said he*.

cōnfiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, *finish*; also *exhaust*. [faciō].

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *go away, come off*. [excēdō].

dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *doubt, hesitate*. *indubitable*.

## Exercises

246. 1. "Num ob hanc causam," inquit, "rēx, dē fidē meā dubitās?" 2. Certum diem sacrifici, mī amīce, cōstituēmus. 3. Hoc sacrificium ad āram tuam, magna filia Iovis, facientēs fidem tuam petimus. 4. Castra, lēgāte, prō quibus exercitum cōstituistī, bene sunt mūnīta et nātūrā et manū. 5. Nōn sine ope dīvinā, cīvēs, Rōmānī bellum gerunt atque haec ingentia opera cōficiunt. 6. Equitātus, Ascanī, in eam partem missus hostibus occurret. 7. "Cupisne," inquit, "mī fili, mēcum in Italiam discēdere?" 8. Quam ob rem,<sup>1</sup> clāre cōnsul, integrī militēs legiōnī vulneribus iam cōfectae ab hōc cornū nōn succēdunt? 9. Hannibal dum oppidum oppugnat, vulnus accēpit. 10. Bellum suscēpit et magnās rēs viribus opibusque efficit.

247. **Position of Vocative.**—The vocative normally follows one or more words, as in the sentences above.

248. **Position of inquit.**—Inquit follows one or more words of the quotation, as in sentences 1 and 7 above.

249. 1. To great Jove, whom no one surpasses in justice, we make this sacrifice. 2. For without divine aid we shall accomplish nothing. 3. "My son," said he, "the resources

<sup>1</sup> on account of what thing, that is why.

of the Romans are enormous." 4. My boy, when the sacrifice had been finished, were you not ordered to take the place of your father? 5. After the surrender of Saguntum, Hannibal went away from there. 6. Great forces of cavalry must be collected. 7. In that battle, Cornelius, although<sup>1</sup> exhausted by wounds, you were saved by the superhuman valor of your son. 8. I hesitate, brother, to put you in command of the army. 9. "Never before, my fellow-citizens," said he, "have I demanded your aid and protection." 10. Why, my friend, do you hesitate to fix a definite day?

## LESSON XXXVI

**250. Locative Case.** — Names of towns have a locative case, which is used to denote the place where. In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative is the same as the genitive, and elsewhere it is the same as the ablative: **Rōmae**, at Rome; **Saguntī**, at Saguntum; **Karthāgine**, at Carthage; **Syrācūsis**, at Syracuse.

The common nouns **domus** and **rūs** have the locatives **domi**, at home, and **rūri**, in the country.

## 251.

## Vocabulary

<b>domus</b> , -ūs, <sup>2</sup> f., <i>home</i> . <i>domestic</i> .	<b>iūs, iūris</b> , n., <i>right, rights</i> . [iniūria].
<b>gēns, gentis</b> , f., <i>tribe</i> . [genus].	<b>rūs, rūris</b> , n., <i>the country</i> , opposed to the city. <i>rustic</i> .
<b>imperātor, imperātōris</b> , m., <i>general</i> . [imperō].	<b>victor, victōris</b> , m., <i>victor</i> . [vincō].
<b>invidia, -ae</b> , f., <i>envy, unpopularity</i> . <i>invidious</i> .	<b>coepi</b> , perfect tense, <i>have begun</i> , <i>began</i> .
<b>addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum</b> , <i>lead to, bring</i> ; also <i>induce</i> . [ad + dūcō].	
<b>cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum</b> , <i>keep, observe</i> . [servō].	
<b>impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum</b> , <i>obtain</i> (a request).	

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Learn the declension of this word, which has forms of both the second and the fourth declension (section 463).

## Exercises

**252.** 1. Noster imperātor ab illō proeliō quod in *Āfricā* factum est victor discessit. 2. Ille divīnus vir Rōmae habitat. 3. Praesidium Syrācūsīs cōstitutum est. 4. "Domī," inquit, "cīvēs, nēmō mē in meō iūre impedit." 5. Nūntius, quem Rōmam (*see 254*) miseram, frātrī meō domum venienti occurrit. 6. Tandem servī, quī nihil impetrāverant, rūs revocāti sunt. 7. *Ā tē*, Rōma, omnēs gentēs opem fidemque petunt. 8. Hannibal, quī huic imperātōrī successit, omnibus cōsiliō praestitit. 9. Lēgātī Rōmā (*see 255*) vērunt atque Hannibalem in suspiciōnem invidiamque addūcere coepērunt. 10. Sī tū, mī frāter, tuam fidem cōservābis, ego nōn domō discēdam. 11. Domōs nostrās reliquimus et rūre Syrācūsās dēmigrāvimus. 12. Quam ob rem ex urbe dimissus post paucōs diēs in *Āfricam* pervēnit.

**253. Place Where.** — How is the place where expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, *domus*, or *rūs*?

**254. Place to Which.** — The accusatives *Rōmam* (sentence 5), *domum* (sentence 5), *rūs* (sentence 6) denote the place to which, and are to be translated *to Rome, home, into the country*.

How is the place to which expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, *domus*, or *rūs*?

**255. Place from Which.** — The ablatives *Rōmā* (sentence 9), *domō* (sentence 10), *rūre* (sentence 11) denote the place from which, and are to be translated *from Rome, from home, from the country*.

How is the place from which expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, *domus*, or *rūs*?

**256.** 1. I have come from the city into the country, and here I shall stay. 2. If you put this general in command of your army, great king, you will come off victor. 3. The ambassadors who had come from Rome were sent back home

without an answer. 4. When he had finished the sacrifice, he brought his son to the altar of Jupiter. 5. Hannibal was impeded at home by the envy of his fellow-citizens. 6. A messenger was sent to Rome about the tribe which had not observed the rights<sup>1</sup> of ambassadors. 7. We hesitated to remain at Rome; and so we came to Syracuse. 8. After the insurrection they began to obtain from the senators the rights which they had demanded. 9. You ought not to go away from home; for certain disaster is approaching.

## LESSON XXXVII

**257. Present Subjunctive Active.** — Learn the present subjunctive active of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, and *capīō* (sections 490, 491).

Notice that the present subjunctive has *ē* (shortened in the usual places) in the first conjugation and *ā* (shortened in the usual places) in the other conjugations; and that the final vowel of the stem does not appear in the first and third conjugations, and is shortened in the second and fourth conjugations.

In what other mood and tense do the forms *regam*, *audiam*, and *capiam* occur?

## 258.

## Vocabulary

<i>ut</i> , conj., <i>in order that, so that, that.</i>	<i>potest</i> , <i>is able, can.</i>
<i>nē</i> , conj., <i>that not, lest.</i>	<i>senātus</i> , <i>-ūs</i> , m., <i>senate.</i>
<i>iūs iūrandum</i> , <i>iūris iūrandī</i> , n., <i>oath.</i>	<i>voluntās</i> , <i>voluntātis</i> , f., <i>wish, disposition.</i>
<i>odium</i> , <i>-ī</i> , n., <i>hatred. odious.</i>	<i>voluntary.</i>

*cognōscō*, *cognōscere*, *cognōvī*, *cognitum*, *find out, learn. cognizant.*  
*redigō*, *redigere*, *redēgī*, *redāctum*, *reduce, bring.*  
*teneō*, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *hold, keep. [retineō].*

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the singular.

## Exercises

**259.** Inflect in the present subjunctive active **dō**, **teneō**, **resistō**, **mūniō**, and **interficiō**.

**260.** 1. Pater ēius, ut opem dīvinam impetret (*see 261*), sacrificium ad āram Iovis facit. 2. Nē pater meus dubitet, fidem et iūs iūrandum dabō. 3. Pater hoc iūs iūrandum postulat, ut Hannibal ēius odium Rōmānōrum semper memoriā teneat.<sup>1</sup> 4. Hannibal omnis eās gentis in suam potestātem redēgit, Rōmānōs autem superāre nōn potest. 5. In Italiā bellum gerēns semper discessit victor Rōmānōsque victōs dimisit. 6. Cīvēs invidiā adducti cōnsilia imperātōris impediunt, nē domi potestātem ēius augeant. 7. Huic bellō contrā voluntātem senātūs praefectus erat. 8. Hannibal Karthāginem revocātur, ut patriam dēfendat. 9. Lēgāti ad rēgem veniunt, ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem addūcant. 10. Ipse dē voluntāte ēius in<sup>2</sup> sē dubitāre coeperat. 11. Rōmā, Pyrrhe, statim discēdere cupiō, nē Rōmāni cōnsilia mea cognōscant. 12. Tē Rōmae tenēbimus, nē hostibus hās rēs nūntiēs.

**261. Clauses of Purpose.**— In sentence 1 the clause *ut . . . impetret* expresses the father's purpose in making a sacrifice; it may be translated *in order that he may obtain, that he may obtain, to obtain*. The clause *nē . . . dubitet* in sentence 2 also expresses purpose (*that my father may not doubt, lest my father doubt*). Notice that the verbs of these clauses are in the subjunctive.

**262.** 1. I shall come into the country to finish<sup>3</sup> the work. 2. The wound cannot<sup>4</sup> keep him at home. 3. The senate

<sup>1</sup> hold in memory, remember.

<sup>2</sup> toward; sē is accusative.

<sup>3</sup> Be careful not to use the Latin infinitive when the English infinitive expresses purpose.

<sup>4</sup> Two Latin words must be used for *cannot* (*can not, is not able*). See section 260, sentence 4.

holds the leaders, in order that it may bring<sup>1</sup> the state into its power. 4. You ought not to destroy the rights of a free people, to increase your power. 5. He desires to find out the senate's wish, lest he do this against its authority. 6. Hamilcar demands this, in order that he may fire his son with hatred of the Romans. 7. "My son," said he, "will you always keep<sup>2</sup> this oath?" 8. At last victory is certain. 9. The senate sends ambassadors to the king, that they may learn his disposition toward the Romans. 10. They speak against Hannibal, that<sup>3</sup> he may not retain the king's friendship.

## LESSON XXXVIII

**263. Present Subjunctive Passive.** — Inflect *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, and *capiō* in the present subjunctive passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 490, 491).

**264.****Vocabulary**

<i>aditus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>approach</i> , <i>access</i> . [ <i>iter</i> ].	<i>societās</i> , <i>societātis</i> , f., <i>alliance</i> . [ <i>socius</i> ].
<i>potēns</i> , <i>potentis</i> , <i>powerful</i> . <i>omni-</i> <i>potent</i> .	<i>tempus</i> , <i>temporis</i> , n., <i>time</i> . <i>tem-</i> <i>poral</i> .
<i>simul</i> , adv., <i>at the same time</i> . <i>simultaneous</i> .	<i>ūsque</i> , adv., <i>up, even</i> ; <i>ūsque ad</i> , <i>up</i> <i>to, even to</i> .

*aperiō*, *aperīre*, *aperuī*, *apertum*, *open*. *aperture*.

*comparō*, *comparāre*, *comparāvī*, *comparātum*, *prepare*, *procure*. [*parō*].

<sup>1</sup> Use *redigō*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *cōservō*.

<sup>3</sup> Not *ut*. Before you write the conjunction which introduces a clause of purpose, you must notice whether the clause is negative.

## Exercises

**265.** Inflect in the present subjunctive, active and passive, *dūcō, liberō, impediō, accipiō, and iubeō*.

**266.** 1. Senātus lēgātōs mittit, quī societātem faciunt (*see 267*). 2. Lēgātīō Rōmā venit, quae voluntātem rēgis cognōscat. 3. Hannibal magnās cōpiās comparat, quibus Italiā in potestātem suam redigat. 4. Imperātor viam per montis aperit, quā exercitus in Italiā trādūcātur. 5. Ubi aditum ad rēgem impetrāvit, sē ā suspiciōne dēfendere coepit. 6. Quam ob rem societātem habēre cupit cum potentibus rēgibus, quōrum opibus bellum renovētur. 7. Pater mihi imperat ut hoc iūs iūrandum cōservem (*see 268*). 8. Ab eō petō nē mē domī relinquat. 9. Victās gentis in potestāte tuā tenēre dēbēs, nē bellum renovent. 10. Victis gentibus persuādēbō nē bellum renovent. 11. Ā tē postulat ut ūsque ad illud tempus Rōmae maneās. 12. Simul cum moneō ut in reliquum tempus<sup>1</sup> suspiciōnem vitet.

**267. Relative Clauses of Purpose.** — In sentence 1 the relative clause *quī . . . faciunt* expresses the senate's purpose in sending ambassadors; it may be translated *who are to make* or simply *to make*. Notice that it is the subjunctive that denotes purpose, since *quī faciunt* would mean *who make*. Notice too that *ut faciunt* would express the same idea that *quī faciunt* does. So in sentence 3 *quibus redigat* (*with which he may bring, with which to bring*) is equivalent to *ut iis redigat* (*that with them he may bring*).

**268. Substantive Clauses of Volition.** — In sentence 7 the clause *ut . . . cōservem* is the object of *imperat* (*commands me that I keep, commands me to keep*), and in sentence 8 the clause *nē . . . relinquat* is the object of *petō* (*I beg of him that he do not leave, I beg him not to leave*). A clause which is used as the subject or ob-

---

<sup>1</sup> in reliquum tempus, for the future. What is the literal meaning?

ject of a verb is called a substantive clause. Note the verbs which take a clause as object in the sentences above. The substantive clauses used with these verbs are like clauses of purpose in these particulars :—

1. They express what is wanted.
2. They are introduced by *ut* and *nē*.
3. The verb is in the subjunctive.
4. The action is future in relation to the action represented by the principal verb.
5. The best translation is often the English infinitive.

269. 1. He comes home from the country, in order that he may defend his rights against the hatred and violence of these powerful men. 2. He kept the oath up to the time of his death. 3. An embassy is sent to<sup>1</sup> bring<sup>2</sup> him to Rome. 4. They increase the king's envy and suspicion, that Hannibal may not be defended by him. 5. I obtain access to the king, and beg him not to injure me. 6. He cannot persuade me to abandon the alliance. 7. The victor demands that the gates of the city be opened. 8. At the same time he commands that vessels be procured. 9. We see the danger, and send the cavalry to prevent the attack.

### HANNIBAL'S OATH

*Sī Rōmānī, id quod nēmō dubitat, omnīs populōs virtūte superāvērunt, Hannibal cēterīs imperātōribus illōrum temporum cōsiliō praestitit. Nam bellum cum populō Rōmānō in Italiā gerēns semper discessit victor. Domī autem cīvium suōrum invidiā impediēbātur, quā dē causā Rōmānōs nōn superāvit.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Use *addūcō*.

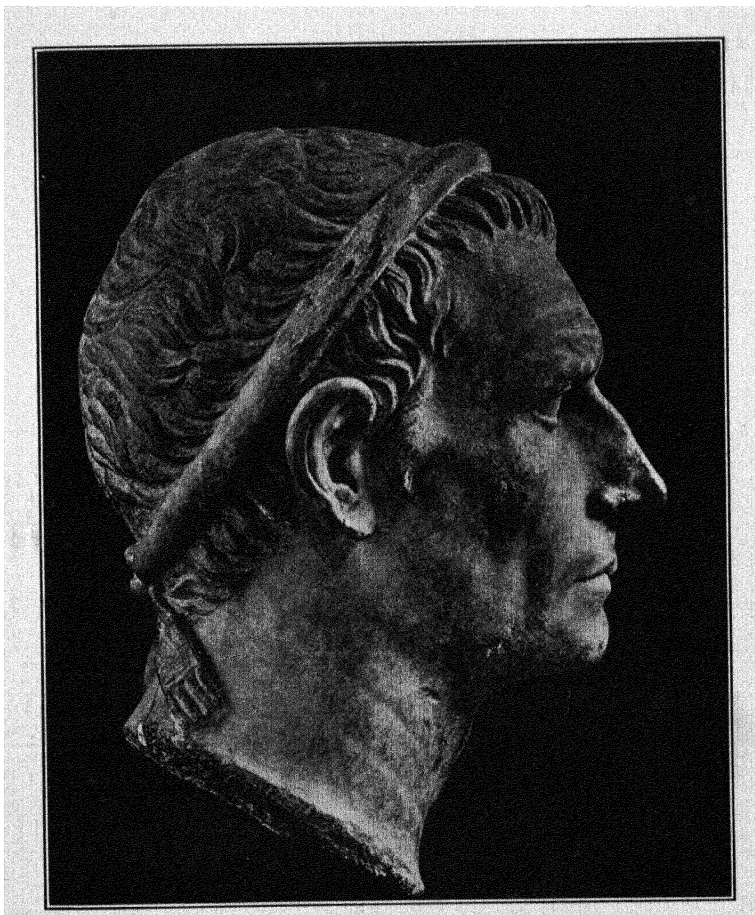
Hannibal fuit Hamilcaris filius. Odium Rōmānōrum ā patre relictum ūsque ad diem mortis cōservāvit. Quī quidem patriā expulsus cōsilia bellī capere numquam dēstitit. Rēgem potentem Antiochum cupiditāte bellī incendit, quī  
 5 Asiā ad arma contrā Italiā vocāvit. Senātus ad rēgem mittit<sup>1</sup> lēgātōs, quī ēius voluntātem in Rōmānōs cognōscant. Hī Hannibalem in suspiciōnem addūxērunt. Itaque rēx etiam dē fidē ēius dubitāre coepit. Tandem Hannibal id vidit, atque aditum ad rēgem petiit. Ubi tempus cōstitutum vēnit,  
 10 multa dē odiō suō in Rōmānōs dixit. Deinde hoc adiūnxit:—

“Pater meus,” inquit, “Hamilcar in Hispāniā Karthāgine imperātor discessūrus erat. Dum Iovī sacrificium facit, quaesivit ā mē puerō: ‘Cupisne, mī fili, mēcum in castra venīre?’ Quod ubi audīvī, ab eō petō ut mē sēcum ducat.  
 15 ‘Id faciam,’ inquit, ‘sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.’ Simul mē ad āram addūxit ad quam sacrificium faciēbat. Tum mē eam tenentem sīc dīcere iussit: ‘Numquam ego in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs erō.’ Id iūs iūrandum patrī datum per hōs annōs cōservāvī, neque in reliquum tempus dē  
 20 eādē sententiā dēdūcar. Tū sī societātem cum Rōmānīs cōgitās, bene faciēs sī mihi cōsiliū tuum nōn nūntiābis. Sī autem bellum parābis, exercitus tuus idōneō duce carēbit nisi mē eī praefēceris.”

Ita puer in Hispāniā cum patre discessit. Post ēius  
 25 mortem equitātūi omnī ab Hasdrubale imperātōre praefectus est. Ubi Hasdrubal quoque interfectus est, exercitus ipse Hannibalī imperiū dedit. Sic Hannibal etiam adulēscēns imperātor factus omnīs gentīs Hispāniāe in suam potestātem bellō redēgit. Saguntum, quae civitās Rōmānīs erat amīca,  
 30 vī expugnāvit exercitūsque magnōs comparāvit. Quārum

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the present tense more frequently in Latin than in English vividly represents a past action as now going on. This is called the historical present.



ANTIOCHUS



cōpiārum partem in Āfricam mīsit, partem in Hispāniā manēre iussit, reliquās in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Ad Pŷrēnaeōs montīs iter faciēns cum multīs gentibus barbarōrum pugnāvit; omnīs victōs dīmīsit. Postquam ad Alpīs vēnit, quae sunt inter Galliam et Italiam, barbarōs exercitum itinere prohibētis fugāvit et cōpiās trādūxit. Hōc itinere nēmō antea cum exercitū in Italiam vēnerat.

## LESSON XXXIX

**270. Past Subjunctive Active.** — Learn the past subjunctive active of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **audiō**, and **capiō** (sections 490, 491).

Notice that the past subjunctive is formed by adding **rē** (with **ē** shortened in the usual places) to the present stem. It may be helpful to remember that the first person singular of the past subjunctive can always be found by adding the personal ending to the present infinitive active: **audire**, **audirem**; **capere**, **caperem**.

**271.****Vocabulary**

**angustiae**, -ārum, f. pl., *pass, defile.*      **praetor**, **praetōris**, m., *praetor, a*  
**collēga**, -ae, m., *colleague.*      Roman magistrate.

**dictātor**, **dictātōris**, m., *dictator.*

**circumveniō**, **circumvenire**, **circumvēni**, **circumventum**, *come around, surround.* [**veniō**].

**contendō**, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentum**, *strive, contend; also hasten.*  
*contention.*

**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, *drive back, rout.* [**expellō**].

**praemittō**, **praemittere**, **praemisi**, **praemissum**, *send forward, send ahead.* [**mittō**].

**Exercises**

**272.** Inflect in the past subjunctive active **aperiō**, **careō**, **comparō**, **contendō**, and **cupiō**.

**273.** 1. Civitātibus persuāsit ut iūs iūrandum inter sē<sup>1</sup> darent societātemque facerent. 2. Ab eō simul petēmus ut voluntātem nostram memoriā teneat. 3. Magnum exercitum comparat, quō gentis potentis in dēditionem redigat. 4. Praetor parvam manum praemisit, quae iter per angustias aperiret. 5. Inde magnis itineribus usque ad castra hostium contendit. 6. Cōsul cum collēgā contrā Hannibalem vēnit, ut eum impediret ac pelleret. 7. Collēgae suō persuādere nōn potest nē cum hostibus contendat. 8. Hannibal insidiās parāvit, ut cōsulem circumveniret. 9. Dēlecta manus equitum ā dictātōre mittētur, quae montem occupet, quī oppidō est propinquus.

**274. Use of Subjunctive Tenses.** — Notice that the present subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past when the principal verb represents a past action.

**275.** 1. The consul reports this to his colleague, in order that he may learn his opinion. 2. We persuaded him to give us time. 3. They will remain in the defile, that they may not be seen by the enemy. 4. The cavalry was sent forward to surround the routed army. 5. The senate demanded that the dictator contend with the enemy at once. 6. Fired with hatred, they warned him not to form new plans. 7. We command the praetor to seize the pass and fortify the approaches. 8. I myself hastened to the city by forced marches, in order that I might defend it against the enemy.

---

<sup>1</sup> *among themselves, that is, to each other or to one another.*

## LESSON XL

**276. Past Subjunctive Passive.**—Inflect *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, and *capiō* in the past subjunctive passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 490, 491).

## 277.

## Vocabulary

<i>tam</i> , adv., <i>so</i> , modifying adjectives and adverbs.	<i>facilis</i> , <i>facile</i> , <i>easy</i> . <i>facility</i> .
<i>tantus</i> , -a, -um, <i>so great, so much</i> .	<i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> , f., <i>night</i> . <i>nocturnal</i> .
<i>dētrimentum</i> , -ī, n., <i>loss</i> . <i>detri-mental</i> .	<i>noctū</i> , adv., <i>at night, by night</i> .
<i>fugiō</i> , <i>fugere</i> , <i>fūgi</i> , <i>fugitūrus</i> , <i>flee</i> . [ <i>fugō</i> ].	<i>subsidium</i> , -ī, n., <i>reserve, reinforcement, assistance</i> . <i>subsidiary</i> .
<i>recipiō</i> , <i>recipere</i> , <i>recēpi</i> , <i>receptum</i> , <i>take back, receive</i> ; <i>sē recipere</i> , <i>betake oneself, retreat</i> . [ <i>capiō</i> ].	

## Exercises

**278.** Inflect in the past subjunctive, active and passive, *recipiō*, *iubeō*, *fugō*, *pellō*, and *circumveniō*.

**279.** 1. *Tibi imperāverant nē bellum in reliquum tempus cum sociis populī Rōmānī gererēs.* 2. *Imperātor lēgātum noctū praemisit, quī equitēs per angustiās trādūceret.* 3. *Facilem aditum repperit, ut oppidum celeriter expugnāret (see 280).* 4. *Hostēs ita fortiter pugnāvērunt ut nostri pulsī ūsque ad castra sua fugerent.* 5. *Praetor tantum dētrimentum accēpit ut sē recipere cōgerētur.* 6. *Cōsul ā tantā multitudīne hostium circumventus est ut subsidium ā collēgā peteret.* 7. *Hostēs tam propinquī sunt ut signa eōrum videāmus.* 8. *Rēx ita potēns est ut societātem nōbis-cum facere nōn cupiat.* 9. *Tam diū ibi mānsērunt ut in oppidum simul cum cēteris legiōnibus nōn reciperentur.*

10. Nēmō est tam audāx quī noctū iter faciat (*see 281*).  
 11. Nihil tam certum est quod numquam dubitētur.

**280. Clauses of Result.**—In sentence 3 the clause *ut . . . expugnāret* expresses the result of the finding of the approach, and is to be translated *so that he captured*. Notice that the other sentences which contain clauses of result have in the principal clause a word that is translated with *so*. The presence of such a word is usually a safe indication that a following clause expresses result rather than purpose.

Observe carefully sentences 8 and 9. How does a negative clause of result differ from a negative clause of purpose?

Notice that the subjunctive of result may be translated by the English indicative, but not the subjunctive of purpose.

**281. Relative Clauses of Result.**—In sentence 10 the relative clause *quī . . . faciat* expresses result, and is to be translated *that he marches*. Notice that *ut . . . faciat* would express the same idea. Classify the relative clauses in sentences 2 and 11.

**282.** 1. The danger was so great that the praetor sent reinforcements at once. 2. We shall retreat,<sup>1</sup> that we may not be surrounded. 3. The army retreated at night, so that it did not suffer great loss. 4. They were men of so great bravery that no one of them fled. 5. The road was so easy that few were exhausted. 6. Who is so bold that<sup>2</sup> he does not avoid the perils of the night? 7. When the boy came, I opened the letter instantly. 8. Hannibal desires to contend with the Romans, in order that he may destroy the dictator's army.

<sup>1</sup> Use *recipiō* (*we shall betake ourselves*).

<sup>2</sup> Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin.

## LESSON XLI

**283. Present and Past Subjunctive of *sum*.** — Learn the present and past subjunctive of *sum* (section 493).

Notice that the vowel before the personal endings is long, except in the usual places.

The past can be remembered by associating it with the present infinitive, as in the case of the regular conjugations.

## 284.

## Vocabulary

*aciēs*, -ēi, f., *line of battle*.

*aequus*, -a, -um, *level, fair, favorable*.  
*equity*.

*condiciō*, *condiciōnis*, f., *terms, condition*.

*rēs gestae*, *rērum gestārum*, f. pl.,  
*deeds, achievements*.<sup>1</sup>

*accidō*, *accidere*, *accidī*, *happen*. *accident*.

*effugiō*, *effugere*, *effūgī*, *flee from, escape*. [*ex* + *fugiō*].

*indūcō*, *indūcere*, *indūxī*, *inductum*, *lead into, draw*. [*in* + *dūcō*].

## Exercises

**285.** 1. Hannibal effēcit ut bellum contrā Rōmānōs suscipere (see 286). 2. His rēbus<sup>2</sup> effectum est ut exercitus sine dētrimentō noctū effugeret. 3. Accidit<sup>3</sup> ut praetor in angustiis circumventus pellerētur. 4. Accidit<sup>3</sup> ut in<sup>4</sup> insidiās indūcātur. 5. Hannibal in Italiā rēs tam bene gessit ut nēmō ei in aciē<sup>5</sup> resisteret. 6. Ille clārus vir ā senātū petiit nē obsidēs redderentur. 7. Accidit ut aciēs in aequō

<sup>1</sup> Literally *things carried on*.

<sup>2</sup> *Rēs* has even greater flexibility of meaning than *thing*. It has been called a blank check, to be filled out to meet the requirements of the passage in which it occurs. Here *rēbus* may be translated *means*.

<sup>3</sup> Is this present or perfect? See section 274.

<sup>4</sup> Notice that the same preposition often appears in a Latin verb and a phrase modifying the verb.

<sup>5</sup> That is *in a pitched battle*.

locō cōstituerētur. 8. Collēgam praemisit, quī cum hostibus contenderet. 9. Postulāvimus ut condiōnēs essent aequae. 10. Efficiam ut meae rēs gestae semper sint in vestrā memoriā. 11. Tantum erat periculum ut dictātor sē reciperet.

**286. Substantive Clauses of Result.**— In sentence 1 *ut . . . suscipere* tells what Hannibal brought about (*brought it about that they undertook*); it is therefore a substantive clause, the object of *efficit*. In sentence 2 *ut . . . effugeret* tells what was brought about (*it was brought about that the army escaped*); it is therefore a substantive clause, the subject of *effectum est*. So in sentence 3 the subject of *accidit* is the clause *ut . . . pellerētur*. An *ut*-clause used as subject or object of a verb expressing accomplishment or as subject of a verb expressing occurrence is called a substantive clause of result. Note the Latin verbs which take a clause of result as subject or object.

Classify all subordinate clauses in the sentences above.

**287.** 1. It often happens that a prisoner escapes. 2. He demanded that fair terms be given. 3. It happened that the reserves were near. 4. He had brought it<sup>1</sup> about that we escaped without loss. 5. After that time we were not often drawn into an ambush. 6. The approach was so easy that the town was quickly taken. 7. They demand to be led into line of battle. 8. So it happened that all fled at night. 9. This night will destroy the memory of his great achievements. 10. By this means it was brought about that Hannibal was put in command of the army.

---

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

## LESSON XLII

**288. Pronominal Adjectives.**—Learn the declension of *ūnus*, *one*; *alius*, *other*; *alter*, *the other*; and *uter*, *which?* (section 465).

Notice that these adjectives have the regular forms of the first and second declensions, with the following exceptions:—

1. The ending of the genitive singular is *ius* in all genders.
2. The ending of the dative singular is *i* in all genders.
3. *Alius* has the ending *ud* in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

The plural is entirely regular, and for this reason it is not given in the paradigms.

What three pronouns have the ending *ius* in the genitive singular and the ending *i* in the dative singular? What two pronouns are like *alius* in having the ending *ud* in the neuter? What three others end in *d*?

The other words in the vocabulary below are declined like *ūnus* or *uter*. It is important that the ten adjectives be remembered together.

## 289.

## Vocabulary

<i>alius</i> , <i>alia</i> , <i>aliud</i> , <i>other</i> , <i>another</i> <sup>1</sup> ;	<i>neuter</i> , <i>neutra</i> , <i>neutrum</i> , <i>neither</i> .
<i>alii</i> . . . <i>alii</i> , <i>some</i> . . . <i>others</i> .	<i>neutral</i> .
<i>alias</i> .	<i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, <i>any</i> .
<i>alter</i> , <i>altera</i> , <i>alterum</i> , <i>the other</i> . <sup>1</sup>	<i>nūllus</i> , -a, -um, <i>no</i> , <i>none</i> . <i>nullify</i> .
<i>alternate</i> .	<i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, <i>alone</i> . <i>solitude</i> .
<i>uter</i> , <i>utra</i> , <i>utrum</i> , <i>which?</i> (of two). <sup>2</sup>	<i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um, <i>whole</i> , <i>entire</i> . <i>total</i> .
<i>uterque</i> , <i>utraque</i> , <i>utrumque</i> , <i>each</i>	<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um, <i>one</i> , <i>only</i> . <i>unify</i> .
(of two), <i>both</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *alter* is used when two persons or things are thought of, *alius* when more than two. The plural *alii* means (some) *other*, while *cēteri* means (all) *the other*.

<sup>2</sup> What word must be used to ask *which?* when more than two persons or things are thought of?

## Exercises

**290.** Decline together in both numbers **nūllus aditus, tōtus diēs**; and in the singular **uter puer, alter frāter**.

**291.** 1. Sunt quī nūllās condiōnēs postulent (*see 292*).  
 2. Nōn multī erant quī sine ūllō vulnere effugerent. 3. Nēmō erat quī vulnerātus aciē excēderet. 4. Quis est quī dē imperātōris virtūte dubitet? 5. Hannibal est ūnus vir quī dē victōriā nōn dēspēret. 6. Nōn facile est noctū fugere. 7. Neuter cōsulum ab alterō subsidium petiit. 8. Sibi sōli cōsulit, aliōs servāre nōn potest. 9. Tantum erat dētrīmentum ut cēteri sē recipere cōgerentur. 10. Propter suās rēs gestās dictātor sōlus tōtī exercitūi praefectus erat. 11. Eōrum frātrum utrum revocāvērunt? Utrumque. 12. Alii effugiunt, alii capiuntur. 13. In utrāque parte flūminis praesidium cōstitūtum erit.

**292. Descriptive Relative Clauses.**—In sentence 1 **sunt quī postulent** may be translated *there are men who demand, there are some who demand, there are those who demand*. Notice that the omitted antecedent of **quī** is indefinite, and that the verb of the relative clause is in the subjunctive. A clause which describes the person or thing denoted by an indefinite antecedent is called a descriptive clause. Observe carefully what expressions are followed by a descriptive clause; and notice that *there* is used in translating most of them, and that the relative clause is necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence.

**293.** 1. He defeated the other consul without any loss. 2. Some were drawn into an ambush, others escaped. 3. On which wing will the reserves be stationed? 4. While the enemy were waiting for night, we found another level approach. 5. It happened that the army of each consul was destroyed. 6. Neither of the consuls carried things on so

successfully that he retained the favor of the whole state. 7. Scipio was the only general who defeated Hannibal. 8. There is no one who surpasses him. 9. There are those who never speak about their own deeds. 10. The thing was so easy that I did it alone.

## LESSON XLIII

## 294. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus, <i>long</i> .	longior, <i>longer</i> .	longissimus, <i>longest</i> .
nobilis, <i>noble</i> .	nobilior, <i>nobler</i> .	nobilissimus, <i>noblest</i> .
audāx, <i>bold</i> .	audācior, <i>bolder</i> .	audācissimus, <i>boldest</i> .
potēns, <i>powerful</i> .	potentior, <i>more powerful</i> .	potentissimus, <i>most powerful</i> .

Notice that there are three degrees of comparison, as in English, and learn the endings of the comparative and superlative.

**295. Declension of the Comparative.** — Learn the declension of *longior* (section 471).

Notice that the comparative is declined like third-declension nouns with genitive plural in *um*.

**296. Declension of the Superlative.** — The superlative is declined like *bonus*.

## 297. Absolute Comparative and Superlative

The comparative is sometimes used to denote an unusual or excessive degree: *longior*, *longer than usual, rather long, too long*.

The superlative is often used to denote merely a very high degree: *longissimus*, *very long*.

## 298.

## Vocabulary

item, adv., *likewise*.longē, adv., *far, by far*. [longus].nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only*. . . but even, *not only . . . but also*.opera, -ae, f., *effort, services*. [opus].absūm, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant*. [ab + sum].opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum, *overwhelm, crush*. [premō].pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *place, pitch (a camp)*. *position*.quam, adv., *than*.quā rē, *on account of which thing, why, wherefore, therefore*.satis, indeclinable noun and adv., *enough, sufficiently*. *satisfaction*.

## Exercises

299. Compare clārus, certus, aequus.

Decline together audācius cōnsilium, potentior cīvis, nōbilior mulier, longissimum iter, illa nōbilissima urbs, hic potentissimus vir.

300. 1. Scīpiō apud Rōmānōs erat longē nōbilissimus, apud Karthāginiēnsis Hannibal. 2. Utrius nōmen erat clārius? 3. Neuter eōrum est clārior quam alter. 4. Post hoc proelium Hannibal Etrūriam petiit, quae nōn longē aberat. 5. Longum est<sup>1</sup> dē aliis Hannibalis victōriis scribere; iam satis dē eius rēbus gestis dictum est. 6. Nōn solum insidiās effūgimus quās equitēs parāverant, sed etiam hostis ipsōs in aciē oppressimus. 7. Neque ūllus nūntius certior quam hic esse potest. 8. Socii nostri tōtās cōpiās auxiliō (see 301) mittunt. 9. Hae cōpiae sunt auxiliō nōbis (see 302). 10. Quā rē uterque dux castra aequiōre locō<sup>2</sup> posuit. 11. Cōsul ūnam legiōnem praesidiō relinquit. 12. Meā operā effēcistis ut aequissimae condiōnēs pācis impetrārentur. 13. Hannibali nōmen populi Rōmāni est odiō.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *it is long, that is it would be tedious.*

<sup>2</sup> When locus is used, the place where is commonly expressed by the ablative without in.

<sup>3</sup> *for hatred, that is an object of hatred.*

**301. Dative of Purpose or Tendency.**—The dative *auxiliō* in sentence 8 expresses the purpose of the allies in sending their forces (*for aid, as aid*), and in sentence 9 it tells to what the forces tend. Note the nouns that are used in this construction, and the verbs with which they are used.

**302. Double Dative Construction.**—The dative of purpose or tendency is often accompanied by another dative, which denotes the person concerned, as in sentence 9 (*for aid to us, an aid to us*).

**303.** 1. There is no other danger that I fear. 2. A very powerful king will come to our aid.<sup>1</sup> 3. Not only are you very famous, but you also have more powerful friends than I. 4. Therefore your services will be an aid to me. 5. It happened that they were drawn into an alliance with another more powerful state. 6. We have no soldier in<sup>2</sup> the whole army who is bolder. 7. Hannibal was an object of hatred to the Romans. 8. The entire war will be finished by this man alone. 9. Some escaped, others were overwhelmed by the violence of the river. 10. The elephant is not far enough away. 11. Hannibal demanded more favorable terms, and his brother likewise.

## HANNIBAL IN THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal pugnāverat ad Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum eōdem illō imperātōre Clastidii iterum contendit, et eum vulnerātum inde ac fugātum dimittit. Idem Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud<sup>3</sup> Trebiam contrā eum vēnit. Cum his Hannibal contendit; utrōsque vicit. Ubi hiems cōfecta est, Appenninum superāvit petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasu-

<sup>1</sup> See section 300, sentence 9.

<sup>2</sup> When *tōtus* is used, the place where is commonly expressed by the ablative without *in*.

<sup>3</sup> *apud* here has the same meaning as *ad* above.

mennum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit, posteāque C. Centēnium praetōrem cum delēctā manū equitum auxiliō Flāminiō ab collēgā missā. Inde in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi ei occurrerunt C. Terentius Varrō et L. Aemilius Paulus cōn-  
5 sulēs. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum occidit.

Post hanc pugnam Rōmam iter facere coepit. Per multōs diēs in propinquis urbī montibus castra habuit. Posteā sē Capuam recēpit. Q. Fabius Maximus dictātor in itinere ei occurrit. Hic ā Fabiō insidiis circumventus noctū sine ūllō  
10 dētrimentō exercitūs per angustiās effūgit. Deinde M. Minucium Rūfum, quī partī exercitūs Rōmānī praefectus erat, fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in insidiās inductum occidit. M. Claudium Mārcellum cōnsulem interfēcit. Longum est dē omnibus proeliis scribere. Quā rē  
15 satis est hoc ūnum dīcere: in Italiā nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō contrā eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in aequō locō castra posuit. Tantus ille fuit.

Tandem in Āfricam revocātus est, ut patriam dēfenderet. Bellum gessit contrā P. Scipiōnem, filium eius Scipiōnis quem  
20 ipse primum apud Rhodanum, deinde apud Padum, tum apud Trebiam fugāverat. Ab eō cupivit pācem impetrāre, ut cōpiās suās augēret. Ad conloquium vēnit, ad condiționēs Scipiōnis nōn vēnit. Post paucōs diēs ad Zamam cum eōdem Scipiōne contendit; pulsus Hadrūmētum magnīs itineribus pervēnit,  
25 quod oppidum ab eō locō longē aberat. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiās parāvērunt; quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Postquam reliquī ex fugā in ūnum locum convēnērunt, statim novum exercitum comparāvit. Dum hoc facit, Karthāginiēsēs  
30 pācem cum Rōmānis fēcērunt.

Posteā lēgāti Karthāginiēsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī ā senātū peterent ut captivī redderentur. Quibus hoc respōnsum datum est: "Captivōs nōn remittēmus; nam Hannibalem,

cūius operā susceptum est bellum, cuique nōmen Rōmānum est odiō, ūsque ad hoc tempus exercitūs vestri ducem habētis, itemque frātre[m] ēius Māgōnem.” Karthāginiēnsēs postquam hoc respōnsum cognōvērunt, Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocāvērunt. Hannibal ubi Karthāginem vēnit, rēx factus est.

## LESSON XLIV

**304. Superlative in *rimus*.** — Adjectives in *er* have in the superlative the ending *rimus*, which is added directly to the *er* : —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
liber, <i>free</i> .	liberior.	liberrimus.
crēber, <i>frequent</i> .	crēbrior.	crēberrimus.
ācer, <i>sharp</i> .	ācrior.	ācerrimus.

**305. Superlative in *limus*.** — The following adjectives have in the superlative the ending *limus* : —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like</i> .	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
humilis, <i>low</i> .	humilior.	humillimus.

## 306.

## Vocabulary

difficilis, difficile, <i>difficult</i> . [facilis].	facile, adv., <i>easily</i> . [facilis].
similis, simile, with dat., <sup>1</sup> <i>like</i> . <i>assimilate</i> .	magistrātus, -ūs, m., <i>magistracy</i> ; also <i>magistrate</i> .
dissimilis, dissimile, with dat., <i>unlike</i> . [similis].	mūnus, mūneris, n., <i>gift</i> . <i>munificent</i> .
humilis, humile, <i>low, humble</i> . <i>humiliate</i> .	spēs, -ei, f., <i>hope</i> . [dēspērō].
castellum, -i, n., <i>stronghold</i> . <i>castle</i> .	ultimus, -a, -um, <i>furthermost, extreme</i> . <i>ultimatum</i> .

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *come to, approach*. [excēdō].  
 aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātum, *build*. *edifico*.

<sup>1</sup> See section 89.

## Exercises

307. Compare *integer* and *miser*.

Decline together *ācrior exercitus*, *liberior diēs*, *difficilius tempus*, *facillima victōria*, *iste homō ācerrimus*.

308. 1. Hannibal nōn solum in bellō sed etiam in magistrātū rēs bene gerēbat. 2. Quā rē opera eius in difficillimis rēbus petēbatur. 3. Neque ūllus alius dux erat cūius in virtūte Karthāginiēnsēs spem pōnerent. 4. Hannibal clārior est quam Scipiō. 5. Hannibal clārior est Scipiōne (*see 309*). 6. Nāvēs quās barbari aedificābant humiliōrēs erant nostris.<sup>1</sup> 7. Ultimum Italiae oppidum nōn longē abest. 8. Uter frātrum patri similior est? Uterque est eī dissimillimus. 9. Ad alteram oppidi partem cum tōtō exercitū accessit et portam occupāvit. 10. Captivī miserrimī fugientēs comprehēnsi sunt. 11. Quid morte est certius? 12. Rēx Hannibali ūnum castellum mūneri dabit.

309. **Ablative of Comparison.** — The ablative *Scipiōne* in sentence 5 expresses the same idea as *quam Scipiō* in sentence 4, and is to be translated in the same way. Notice that when *quam* is used, the word with it is in the same case as the word that denotes the other of the two persons or things compared.

310. 1. The humbler citizens likewise, who were being crushed by men of noble birth, placed their hope in his justice. 2. No route is more difficult than<sup>2</sup> this. 3. Neither of the magistrates is more powerful than I. 4. Some sons are very like their fathers, others very unlike. 5. It will be built easily enough. 6. The stronghold that I had built was given to Hannibal as a gift. 7. I fled alone into the

<sup>1</sup> *nostris* agrees with *nāvibus*, which is understood.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin. What determines the gender and number of the Latin word for *this*?

furthermost forests. 8. Hannibal's life was more glorious than his death. 9. The most active of the soldiers come to the town.



HANNIBAL'S ELEPHANT AND DRIVER

## LESSON XLV

## 311. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i> .	melior, <i>better</i> .	optimus, <i>best</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, <i>worse</i> .	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
magnus, <i>great</i> .	māior, <i>greater</i> .	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>little</i> .	minor, <i>less</i> .	minimus, <i>least</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	plūs, <i>more</i> .	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
senex, <i>old</i> .	senior or māior nātū, <sup>1</sup> <i>older</i> .	maximus nātū, <i>oldest</i> .
iuvenis, <i>young</i> .	iūnior or minor nātū, <i>younger</i> .	minimus nātū, <i>youngest</i> .

Learn thoroughly the comparison of these seven adjectives.

Notice how largely the comparatives and superlatives of these words are used in English, either in their Latin forms or in derivatives: *major, minor, plus, minus, senior, junior, maximum, minimum; ameliorate, plural, majority, minority, plurality, optimist, pessimist*.

312. Declension of *plūs*. — Learn the declension of *plūs* (section 472).

In the singular *plūs* is used only as a substantive. Notice that it has *ium* in the genitive plural, but *a* in the neuter nominative and accusative.

<sup>1</sup> *nātū* is ablative, and the literal meaning is *greater in respect of birth*, that is *greater in age*.

## 313.

## Vocabulary

malus, -a, -um, *bad. malefactor.*  
 iuvenis, iuvenis,<sup>1</sup> *young. juvenile.*  
 senex, senis,<sup>1</sup> *old. senile.*  
 posterus, -a, -um, *following, next.*  
 [post].  
 inferior, inferius, comparative, *lower.*  
 superior, superius, comparative,  
*higher; also former.*  
 summus, -a, -um, *highest, utmost.*  
*summit.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, *outermost, last.*  
*extremity.*  
 decem, indeclinable, *ten. decimal.*  
 multō, *by much, much.*  
 finis, finis, m., *end; finēs (pl.),*  
*boundaries, territory. final.*  
 māiōrēs, māiōrum, m. pl., *ancestors.*  
 post, adv.,<sup>2</sup> *after, afterward.*

## Exercises

314. 1. Hannibal māior nātū fuit quam Scipiō. 2. Hannibal māior nātū fuit quam Scipiō decem annis (*see 315*). 3. Karthāginiēnsēs in extrēmā spē salūtis eius operam petiērunt. 4. Multis post annis<sup>3</sup> Hannibal magistrātus creātus est. 5. Nāvēs barbarōrum multō humiliōrēs sunt quam nostrae. 6. Hostēs oppressi ad nāvis fūgērunt quās in inferiōre parte flūminis nōn longē ā marī aedificāverant. 7. Hoc iter tantō difficilior est ut melius sit alterum temptāre. 8. Rōmāni in finibus hostium castra in superiōre locō semper pōnēbant. 9. Senex<sup>4</sup> viris superiōrum annōrum revocāre nōn potest. 10. Quā rē māiōrēs nostri malōs civis civitatē expellēbant. 11. Nōn plūs animi<sup>5</sup> quam fidei habētis. 12. In summō periculō omnem spem in virtūte sōlā pōnēbāmus. 13. Nōn multō post rēx Hannibali maximum castellum mūneri dedit.

<sup>1</sup> This is the genitive singular. **Iuvenis** and **senex** have **um** in the genitive plural, not **ium**.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that this word may be used as a preposition also.

<sup>3</sup> What case follows **post** when it is used as a preposition?

<sup>4</sup> Here a noun, *old man*.

<sup>5</sup> *more of courage, that is more courage.*

**315. Ablative of Measure of Difference.** — In sentence 2 the ablative *decem annis* tells how much older Hannibal was (*older by ten years, ten years older*).

Find four other instances of this use of the ablative in the sentences above.

**316.** 1. Grain was found easily enough in the enemy's territory. 2. A lower place was chosen, that they might not be far away from the river. 3. The following day was fixed for the battle. 4. A few days after he came to the furthest boundaries of Gaul. 5. In many things<sup>1</sup> the good man is not much better than the bad, but in most things they are very unlike. 6. The good man has more friends. 7. Therefore our ancestors had not only the greatest resources, but also the highest authority. 8. This is more like your former plan. 9. I am ten years younger than you, but my influence is much greater. 10. My brother likewise is in the utmost peril.

## LESSON XLVI

### 317. Regular Comparison of Adverbs

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ADJ.	<i>lātus, wide.</i>	<i>lātior.</i>	<i>lātissimus.</i>
ADV.	<i>lātē, widely.</i>	<i>lātius, more widely.</i>	<i>lātissimē, most widely.</i>
ADJ.	<i>liber, free.</i>	<i>liberior.</i>	<i>liberrimus.</i>
ADV.	<i>liberē, freely.</i>	<i>liberius, more freely.</i>	<i>liberrimē, most freely.</i>
ADJ.	<i>ācer, sharp.</i>	<i>ācrior.</i>	<i>ācerrimus.</i>
ADV.	<i>ācriter, sharply.</i>	<i>ācrius, more sharply.</i>	<i>ācerrimē, most sharply.</i>
ADJ.	<i>fortis, brave.</i>	<i>fortior.</i>	<i>fortissimus.</i>
ADV.	<i>fortiter, bravely.</i>	<i>fortius, more bravely.</i>	<i>fortissimē, most bravely.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative of respect.

Notice that the forms of the adverb come from the corresponding forms of the adjective :—

1. The positive of adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions usually has the ending *ē*. The positive of adverbs formed from adjectives of the third declension usually has the ending *iter*.

2. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter of the comparative of the adjective.

3. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* to *ē*.

## 318.

## Irregular Adverbs

## POSITIVE

benē, *well*.  
malē, *badly*.  
multum, *much*.  
diū, *long*.

## COMPARATIVE

melius, *better*.  
pēius, *worse*.  
plūs, *more*.  
diūtius, *longer*.

## SUPERLATIVE

optimē, *best*.  
pessimē, *worst*.  
plūrimum, *most*.  
diūtissimē, *longest*.

Notice that only the positive of **bene** and **male** is formed irregularly, and that **multum** has the form of the neuter of the adjective in all three degrees.

## 319.

## Vocabulary

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad. latitude.*

lātē, adv., *widely.*

liberē, adv., *freely.*

ācritēr, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

male, adv., *badly, unsuccessfully.*

multum, adv., *much.* [multus].

fortis, forte, *brave.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of. medium.*

prūdēns, prūdēntia, *wise. prudence.*

cūra, -ae, f., *care. accurate.*

labor, labōris, m., *labor, exertion.*

respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum, *reply, answer.* [respōnsum].

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, assume; supplicium sūmere, exact a penalty, inflict punishment.*

## Exercises

320. 1. Māiōrēs nostrī dē malis cīvibus ultimum supplicium sūmēbant. 2. Cum virtūte pugnāvērunt. 3. In mediā

aciē<sup>1</sup> fortiter pugnāvērunt. 4. Hostibus in summō monte<sup>1</sup> fortissimē resistēbant. 5. Diūtissimē<sup>2</sup> maximā cum virtūte resistēbant. 6. Maximā virtūte (*see 321*) resistēbant. 7. Omnēs etiam fortissimī dē vitā dēspērābant. 8. Nēmō iuvenis prūdentior est sene. 9. Timōre liberātus multō liberius respondit. 10. Imperātor per posterum annum rēs male gessit. 11. Ducem dē insidiis certiōrem faciunt.<sup>3</sup> 12. Paucis post diēbus ad hostium finis accessit et oppida eōrum longē lātēque incendit. 13. Castellum minimō labōre aedificātum est. 14. Litterās magnā cum cūrā scribam. 15. Tēcum multum esse cupit, sed patri suō nōn facile persuādēre potest.

**321. Ablative of Manner.** — The ablative *maximā virtūte* in sentence 6 expresses the manner in which they resisted, and is to be translated *with the greatest bravery* or *very bravely*. Notice that the same idea is expressed by the adverb *fortissimē* in sentence 4 and by *maximā cum virtūte* in sentence 5. When there is an adjective modifying the noun, manner may be expressed either with or without *cum*; otherwise *cum* is regularly used.

Find all the ablatives of manner in the sentences above.

**322.** 1. I will do everything carefully<sup>4</sup> and diligently. 2. With great exertion I finished the work after midnight.<sup>5</sup> 3. After I had informed him about this affair, he answered very freely. 4. You have done a most difficult thing with the utmost care, and you have done it well. 5. He has given you these broad fields as a gift. 6. That magistrate was more loved by the humbler citizens. 7. The oldest are not

---

<sup>1</sup> Not *the middle line of battle*, but *the middle of the line of battle*, that is, *the center* (the military term for the middle of an army drawn up for battle). Certain other adjectives can be used in Latin to denote a part: *as reliquus, the rest of*; *summus, the top of*.

<sup>2</sup> See section 297.

<sup>3</sup> *make more certain*, that is, *inform*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the ablative of manner.

<sup>5</sup> That is, *the middle of the night*.

always the wisest. 8. The ten legions which had been stationed in a lower position were in like danger. 9. These brave men fought fiercely, but they had no hope. 10. We took the plunder and fled. 11. There is nothing that is more unlike war. 12. The former victory was much<sup>1</sup> more widely reported.

## LESSON XLVII

**323. Perfect Subjunctive.** — Learn the perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō** (sections 490, 491); and the perfect subjunctive of **sum** (section 493).

How does the perfect subjunctive active differ from the future perfect indicative active?

Notice that the perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the present subjunctive of **sum**.

### 324.

### Vocabulary

-ne, in indirect questions, <i>whether</i> .	<b>hospitium</b> , -i, n., <i>hospitality</i> .
<b>absēns</b> , <b>absentis</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>absent</i> . [ <b>absum</b> ].	<b>hūc</b> , adv., <i>to this place, hither</i> . [ <b>hic</b> ].
<b>adversārius</b> , -i, m., <i>opponent, adversary</i> .	<b>primō</b> , adv., <i>at first</i> . [ <b>primus</b> ].
<b>enim</b> , conj., <i>for</i> .	<b>venēnum</b> , -i, n., <i>poison</i> . <b>venom</b> .
<b>exitus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>outlet, exit</i> . [ <b>aditus</b> ].	<b>vīvus</b> , -a, -um, <i>alive</i> . [ <b>vīta</b> ].

**intelligō, intelligere, intelligēxi, intelligētum, understand. intellect.**

**neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi, neglētum, disregard, neglect.**

**probō, probāre, probāvi, probātum, approve. approbation.**

**solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum, loose; nāvem solvere, set sail. absolution.**

### Exercises

**325.** Inflect in the perfect subjunctive, active and passive, **neglegō, probō, praeficiō, impediō, and prohibeō**.

<sup>1</sup> Not multum. See section 315.

<sup>2</sup> **Absēns** is the present participle of **absum**, and therefore has the ending **e** in the ablative singular.

**326.** 1. Ubi est Hannibal? 2. Lēgātī quaerunt ubi sit Hannibal (*see 327*). 3. Rēx intellegēbat ubi esset Hannibal, sed dubitābat eōs certiōrēs facere. 4. Male iūs hospitī cōservābit; adversāriis enim<sup>1</sup> Hannibalis dēmōnstrābit ubi ille habitet. 5. Quā rē hī lēgātī hūc Rōmā missi sunt? 6. Hannibal statim intellegit quā rē lēgātī Rōmānōrum eō missi sint. 7. Nē vivus caperētur, venēnum sūmpsit. 8. Sic fortissimus dux post summōs labōrēs ē vitā excessit. 9. Haec rēs mihi cūrae semper erit, neque eam absēns neglegam. 10. Oppidum decem lātōs exitūs habet. 11. Quaerō nāvemne post mediam noctem solverit. 12. Prīmō quae-rēmus quae cōsilia probāta sint. 13. Omnēs prūdētēs eōdem animō sunt dē hīs cōsiliis pessimis. 14. Ūsque ad finem posterī diēi ācerrimē restitimus.

**327. Indirect Questions.**—Sentence 1 is a direct question, or one that gives the exact words of the person asking it. In sentence 2 the same question is expressed differently in a subordinate clause, the object of *quaerunt* (*ask where Hannibal is*). An interrogative subordinate clause is called an indirect question.

Find all the other indirect questions in the sentences above, and notice that an indirect question can be recognized by these features:—

1. It is a substantive clause.
2. It is introduced by an interrogative word.
3. Its verb is in the subjunctive.

**328.** 1. I will learn who has been with him most. 2. Hannibal's adversaries wish to inflict the same punishment on<sup>2</sup> his absent brother. 3. At first the king approved my plans, but afterward disregarded them. 4. Both old and young were received with<sup>3</sup> hospitality. 5. The best opin-

<sup>1</sup> *Enim*, like *autem*, cannot stand first in a sentence or clause, but is usually the second word.

<sup>2</sup> See section 320, sentence 1.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use *cum*.

ions are often not defended most freely. 6. He cannot find out where the lower outlet of the marsh is. 7. For who is able to say whether the marsh has any outlet? 8. He understands why they have come hither. 9. Our ancestors were much more widely feared than we. 10. No one was left alive on the outermost wall. 11. Who loosed that prisoner? No one answers. 12. At last they understand why he has always had poison with him.

### THE LAST YEARS OF HANNIBAL

Nōn solum in bellō Hannibal fuit magnā diligentīā, sed etiam in magistrātū. Nam ipse effecit ut opēs patriae eius augerentur. Quā dē causā lēgātī Rōmā Karthāginem vēnerunt. Hannibal statim intellegit quā rē hī missi sint. Itaque, 5 nē lēgātīs trāderētur Rōmamque dūcerētur, in Syriam ad Antiochum fugit. Quod ubi Poenī cognōverunt, nāvis miserunt, quae eum comprehenderent; domum eius occupātam delēverunt, ipsum ē civitate expulserunt.

Posteā autem Hannibal cum paucis nāvibus ad Āfricam 10 accessit, ut bellum contrā Rōmānōs renovāret. Nam Antiochō, cuius in auxiliō magnam spem pōnēbat, iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam veniret. In eandem spem Māgōnem frātre suum addūxit, quem ad sē vocāverat. Id ubi Poenī cognōverunt, dē Māgōne absente idem supplicium 15 sūmpsērunt quod dē Hannibale sūmpserant. Uterque dē salute suā dēspērāvit ac nāvem solvit. Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit, Māgō ā servis suis interfectus est.

Antiochus primō cōnsilia Hannibalis probābat, posteā autem eadem neglegēbat. Quem tamen Hannibal nullā in rē dēseruit. Praefectus erat paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā in Asiam<sup>1</sup> 20 dūcere iussus erat, iisque cum Rhodiōrum classe contendit.

---

<sup>1</sup> Asia Minor is meant.

Sui<sup>1</sup> multitudīne adversāriōrum superātī sunt, ipse in eō cornū ubi rem gessit victor fuit. Tandem ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit, apud quem eōdem animō in<sup>2</sup> Italiam fuit quemque contrā Rōmānōs armāvit. Ēius rēgis adversāriōs terrā marique<sup>3</sup> saepe pepulit. 5

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae essent. Ūnus ex iis senātum certiōrem fēcit dē amicitīā quae inter Prūsiam et Hannibalem erat. Patrēs lēgātōs in Asiam misērunt, quī ab rēge peterent ut Hannibalem trāderet. His petentibus Prūsias haec respondit: "Ego quidem nihil 10 faciam quod contrā iūs hospitī sit. Si vōs ipsī illum comprehendere cupitis, nōn prohibēbō; locum ubi est facile inveniētis." Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificāverat ut in omnibus partibus exitūs habēret. 15

Hūc ubi lēgātī Rōmānōrum vērunt ac multitudīne hominum domum ēius circumdedērunt, Hannibal dē salūte suā dēspērāns, nē vivus in manūs hostium veniret, venēnum quod semper sēcum habēbat sūmpsit. Sic vir fortissimus post multōs magnōsque labōrēs ē vitā excessit. 20

## LESSON XLVIII

**329. Past Perfect Subjunctive.** — Learn the past perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **audiō**, **capīō** (sections 490, 491); and the past perfect subjunctive of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the tense-sign of the past perfect subjunctive active is **issē**, with **ē** shortened in the usual places; and that the past perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the past subjunctive of **sum**.

<sup>1</sup> *his men*, in contrast with *ipse*.

<sup>2</sup> *toward*.

<sup>3</sup> *by land and sea*.

## 330.

## Vocabulary

collis, collis, m., *hill*.

complūrēs, complūra, pl. adj.,<sup>1</sup> *several*. [plūs].

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack. impetuous*.

incommodum, -i, n., *misfortune. incommode*.

committō, committere, commisi, commissum, with proelium, *join battle, begin the battle*. [mittō].

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentum, *sustain*. [sub + teneō].

passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (two steps about 5 feet in our measure).

rūrsus, adv., *again*.

## Exercises

331. Inflect in the past perfect subjunctive, active and passive, solvō, recipiō, circumveniō, iubeō, and cōservō.

332. 1. Primō nōs, quī tē multum amāmus, cōsiliū tuum probābāmus. 2. Quaesivī suppliciumne dē frātre meō absente sūmptum esset. 3. Ibi flūmen est decem passibus lātius. 4. Karthāginiēnsēs lātē quondam mare tenerant. 5. Quaeram proeliumne in summō colle commissum sit. 6. Imperāverat enim complūribus tribūnis militum ut rūrsum impetum in mediam hostium aciem ācritē facerent.<sup>2</sup> 7. Equitēs tantā virtūte pugnābant ut adversārii impetum male sustinērent. 8. Nēmō intellegit quae fuerit causa illius incommodi. 9. Nōn est prūdēns quī pericūlum neglegat. 10. Etiam fortissimō salūs est cūrae.

333. *Harmony of Tenses*. — What determines whether the present or the past subjunctive shall be used in a subordinate clause? The use of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive is determined in the same way. We have, then, this rule for the harmony of tenses: The present or perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past or

<sup>1</sup> Declined like the plural of plūs. See section 312.

<sup>2</sup> Impetum facere in may be translated *charge upon*.

past perfect when the principal verb represents a past action. The present and past subjunctive represent an action at or after the time of the principal verb; the perfect and past perfect represent an action before the time of the principal verb. Clauses of purpose, therefore, regularly admit only the present and past subjunctive.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSE		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE		
present	} indicative	subjunctive	{ present (action at or after the time)	
future				{ perfect (action before the time)
future perfect				
past	} indicative	subjunctive	{ past (action at or after the time)	
perfect				{ past perfect (action before the time)
past perfect				

Explain the tense of each subjunctive in the sentences above, remembering that the time of both the principal and the subordinate verb must be considered: for example, *sūmptum esset* in sentence 2 is past perfect because it represents an action before the past time of the principal verb (*quaesivī*).

Notice that *quī . . . amāmus* in sentence 1 is a subordinate clause, and that *amāmus* is indicative. The rule for the harmony of tenses does not mean that all verbs in subordinate clauses are subjunctive. Whether the subjunctive shall be used is determined by the rules for the subjunctive; if it is used, the tense is determined by the rule for the harmony of tenses.

Notice that the harmony of tenses in English is regularly the same as in Latin: *I ask where he is, I ask where he has been, I asked where he was, I asked where he had been*. But the English past in a subordinate clause may stand for the Latin perfect or past subjunctive, according to the tense of the principal verb: *I ask where he was* (perfect in Latin), *I asked where he was* (past in Latin).

**334.** 1. I come hither to inform you about my misfortune.  
 2. He asks which legion sustained the attack best.      3. A few paces<sup>1</sup> from this outlet he stationed several soldiers to

<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative of measure of difference.

defend it. 4. Do you see on which side of the hill our men have joined battle? 5. I had not understood why you were not answering more freely. 6. They will persuade you to undertake even greater labors. 7. Several days afterward he set sail; I never saw him again alive. 8. I asked whether the king had observed the rights of hospitality. 9. I do not see why the poison did not injure me.

### LESSON XLIX

**335. Cardinal Numerals.** — Learn the cardinal numerals given in section 479.

Notice that the cardinal numerals from *undecim* to *septendecim* are compounds expressing addition, *-decim* standing for *decem*, as English *-teen* for *ten*; but that *duodēviginti*, *undēviginti* express subtraction.

What Latin ending corresponds, except in *viginti*, to English *-ty*?

What two Latin endings are used to denote hundreds?

Notice that the arrangement of numerals is mostly the same as in English: *twenty-one* or *one and twenty*, *one hundred one* or *one hundred and one*; but when there are more than two numerals *et* is not used: *one hundred twenty-one*.

What English words evidently derived from Latin cardinal numerals can you call to mind?

**336. Declension of Cardinal Numerals.** — Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the plural of *mille*, and the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*.

Review the declension of *ūnus* (section 465).

Learn the declension of *duo*, *trēs*, and the plural of *mille* (section 480).

The hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*, except that the ending of the genitive plural is *um* instead of *orum*.

## Exercises

**337.** 1. Complūrīs centuriōnēs praemittit, quī cognōscant quid adversārii faciant. 2. Impetūs eōrum quinque diēs sustinuerāmus. 3. Duodecim diēbus post dux cum trigintā milibus peditum et mille equitibus (*see 338*) nāvis solvit. 4. Oppidum aberat tria milia passuum.<sup>1</sup> 5. Rēx Hannibalem sēcum multōs annōs tenuit neque iūs hospiti neglēxit. 6. Venēnum sēcum diem noctemque habēbat, nē vivus caperētur. 7. Eum etiam absentem timēbitis. 8. Multa enim et magna incommoda iam accēpistis. 9. Exitus angustiārum ducentōs passūs lātus est. 10. Flūmen est ducenta milia passuum longum, ad mare duo milia passuum lātum. 11. Nōn cognōverat quis esset pater duōrum puerōrum.

**338. Use of Cardinal Numerals.**—Notice that the cardinal numerals, except the plural of *mille*, are adjectives, and follow the rule for the agreement of adjectives. The plural of *mille* is regularly used as a substantive, and is modified by a genitive: *cum mille equitibus*, with a thousand horsemen, as in English; but *cum trigintā milibus peditum*, with thirty thousands of foot-soldiers, where we say with thirty thousand foot-soldiers.

**339. Accusative of Extent or Duration.**—Find all expressions of extent of space and duration of time in the sentences above, and notice what case is used in them.

**340.** 1. We had sent three soldiers hither to find out where the hill was. 2. I do not understand whether my plan was approved. 3. They retreated again two or three miles to the river. 4. The trench was four hundred and thirty paces long. 5. He remained there six days. 6. Finally

---

<sup>1</sup> *three thousand paces, or three miles.*

he joined battle with the enemy. 7. I asked why you had stayed in the city one whole night. 8. At first she will be at Rome for a few days; then she will come into the country. 9. The seven kings of Rome reigned two hundred and forty-four years.

## LESSON L

**341. Ordinal Numerals.** — Learn the first ten ordinal numerals (section 479).

What English words evidently derived from these numerals can you call to mind?

All the ordinal numerals are declined like **bonus**.

### 342. Vocabulary

altus, -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i> altitude.	pūblicus, -a, -um, <i>of the state, public;</i>
brevis, breve, <i>short.</i> brevity.	lic; rēs pūblica, <i>public interest,</i>
honor, honōris, m., <i>honor.</i>	<i>commonwealth, republic.</i>
nātus, -a, -um, <i>born, old</i> (in exact	vetus, veteris, <sup>1</sup> <i>old</i> (not new). <i>vet-</i>
statements of age). [nātūra].	eran.
pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot.</i> [pedes].	

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptum, *snatch away, take away; also rescue. rapine.*

### Exercises

**343.** 1. Eō tempore (*see 344*) impetum fēcimus proeliumque commisimus. 2. Posterō diē collem fossā trium milium passuum<sup>2</sup> mūnivimus. 3. Brevi tempore complūra oppida maxima occupāvisti. 4. Paucis annis omnem Galliam in potestātem meam redēgeram. 5. Etiam adulēscēns trīs et vīginti annōs nātus exercitū praefectus est. 6. Honōrem

<sup>1</sup> Learn the declension of this word (section 469). In what respects is it irregular?

<sup>2</sup> That is *three miles long*.

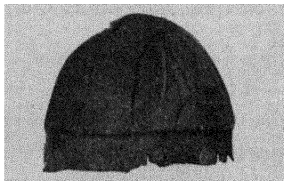
quī mihi datus est iste homō ēripiet. 7. Tertium Pūnicum bellum susceptum est annō quinquāgēnsimō primō<sup>1</sup> postquam secundum cōfectum est. 8. Dictātorem creāre dēbētis, quī veterem auctōritātem rei pūblicae sustineat. 9. Hōc tempore anni flūmen est septem pedēs altum. 10. Clārissimus vir magistrātum sex annōs retinuit.

**344. Ablative of Time.** — *Eō tempore* in sentence 1 expresses the time at which the thing was done (*at that time*), and *brevī tempore* in sentence 3 expresses the time within which the thing was done (*in a short time*). Find all other examples of the ablative of time in the sentences above. Distinguish carefully between the accusative and the ablative in expressions of time: the accusative tells how long; the ablative tells when.

**345.** 1. Within ten years I shall receive the highest honors. 2. I marched day and night, that I might arrive at the time fixed. 3. The enemy had pitched camp five miles from this place. 4. I remained there nine days, and on the tenth day was rescued from<sup>2</sup> danger. 5. Do you ask at what time this great misfortune happened to the republic? 6. Within one year they again restored to me the old honors which you had taken away. 7. In the eighth year of the war the boy was eight years old. 8. Here the trench is two feet wider, but not much deeper. 9. Our pace is shorter than the Roman.

<sup>1</sup> *fifty-first*, but *quinquāgēnsimō* is an ordinal numeral (*fiftieth*).

<sup>2</sup> *ex*.



HELMET FROM CANNAE

## LESSON LI

**346. Present Imperative.**— Learn the present imperative, active and passive, of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, *capiō* (sections 489, 490, 491); and the present imperative of *sum* (section 493).

**347. Personal Endings.**— Notice that the singular of the present imperative active has no personal ending, but is the present stem of the verb. What is the ending of the plural? What two other forms of the verb are the same as the singular of the present imperative passive? What other form is the same as the plural of the present imperative passive?

**348. Irregular Forms.**— *Dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* drop *e* in the singular of the present imperative active: *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

## 349.

## Vocabulary

<i>adventus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>arrival</i> . [ad +	<i>magis</i> , adv., <i>more</i> . [magnus].
<i>veniō</i> ].	<i>maximē</i> , adv., <i>most</i> , <i>especially</i> .
<i>caedēs</i> , <i>caedis</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i> , <i>carnage</i> .	[magnus].
[occidō].	<i>singulī</i> , -ae, -a (pl.), <i>one by one</i> ,
<i>civīlis</i> , <i>civīle</i> , <i>civil</i> . [civis].	<i>singly</i> .
<i>intereā</i> , adv., <i>meanwhile</i> . [inter +	<i>ūniversus</i> , -a, -um, <i>all together</i> , <i>in a</i>
<i>is</i> ].	<i>body</i> . [ūnus].
<i>intrā</i> , prep. with acc., <i>within</i> . [inter].	<i>uxor</i> , <i>uxōris</i> , f., <i>wife</i> .

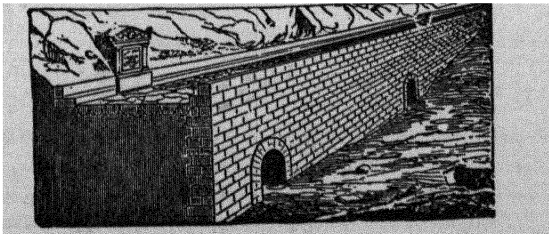
*contineō*, *continēre*, *continui*, *contentum*, *hold*, *restrain*. [teneō].

## Exercises

**350.** Inflect in the present imperative active *absum*, *contineō*, *faciō*, *dīcō*, *reperiō*, and *probō*; in the present imperative passive *dūcō*, *ēriplō*, *sustineō*, *circumveniō*, and *cōnservō*.

**351.** 1. Tū summōs honōrēs rei pūblicae pete. 2. Octō annis post adventum suum cōsul creātus est. 3. Dic<sup>1</sup> mihi quō annō bellum cīvile cōnfectum sit. 4. Revocāte animōs vestrōs ad memoriā ingentis illius caedis quae eō tempore facta est. 5. Brevi tempore barbari ad urbem ūniversi accēdent. 6. Ēripite uxōrēs vestrās ex periculō. 7. Intereā militēs intrā silvās continēte. 8. Nihil Rōmāni magis cupiēbant quam cum hoste vetere contendere. 9. Scipiō singulis civitatibus multa reddidit quae Karthāginiēsēs ēripuerant. 10. Superiōribus temporibus iūra bellī maximē cōservābāmus.

**352.** 1. Fellow-citizens,<sup>2</sup> rescue your country from the hands of the enemy. 2. Meanwhile hold the army within the camp and await my arrival. 3. Be with us on the seventh day. 4. Advise him especially to avoid<sup>3</sup> suspicion. 5. The elephants came into the line of battle one by one, and were stationed all together on the other wing. 6. We fear the carnage of civil war more than the violence of all our enemies. 7. Give him back the money at once, or I shall hand you over to the magistrate. 8. His wife was twenty-seven years old. 9. The water is almost three feet higher than it was at our arrival.

<sup>1</sup> *tell.*<sup>2</sup> See section 247.<sup>3</sup> See section 268.

ROMAN ROAD

## LESSON LII

**353. Indefinite Pronouns.** — Learn (section 487) the declension of the following indefinite pronouns: —

**quis** (quī), *quae or qua, quid* (quod), *any, any one, anything.*

**aliquis** (aliqui), *aliqua, aliquid* (aliquid), *some, some one, something.*

**quisque, quaeque, quidque** (quodque), *each, each one, each thing.*

**quidam, quaedam, quiddam** (quoddam), *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing.*

**quisquam, quicquam**, *any one, anything.*

How does indefinite **quis** differ in declension from interrogative **quis**? How does it differ from **aliquis**?

Notice that **m** is changed to **n** before **d** in the declension of **quidam**. In what other pronoun does the same change occur?

Notice that **quisquam** has no feminine and no plural.

The indefinite pronouns, except **quisquam**,<sup>1</sup> may be used as adjectives, and the feminine singular is generally used only as an adjective; where two forms are given, one of which is in parenthesis, the latter is regularly used as the adjective: **aliquid**, *something*; **aliquid bellum**, *some war*. Compare what is said about the adjective forms of **quis** in section 145.

**354. Use of *quis* and *quisquam*.** — The indefinite **quis** is used after **sī, nisi, nē**, and **num**. **Quisquam** is used in sentences which express a negative idea.

## Exercises

**355. 1.** **Nē** quid dētrimentī<sup>2</sup> rēs pūblica acciperet, militēs sē ā caede continēre iussī sunt. **2.** Neque tam brevī tempore quisquam mē ex tantō periculō ēripere potest. **3.** Aliquō-

<sup>1</sup> **Ūllus** is the adjective corresponding to **quisquam**.

<sup>2</sup> *anything of loss, that is any loss.*

rum uxōrēs fugā salūtem petere coāctae sunt. 4. Miser sum eō incommodō. 5. Neque quicquam magis cupiō quam tēcum iter facere. 6. Imperātor ā militibus tuis appellātus es, quod nōmen tibi erat honōri. 7. Tum quidā adulēscēns ingenti magnitūdine corporis postulāvit ut fortissimus Rōmānōrum sēcum<sup>1</sup> pugnāret. 8. Si quis virtūte maximē superat, dux creandus est. 9. Intereā ūiversi adventum cūiusque nūnti cum spē exspectāmus. 10. Neque quicquam auxili ad eōs missūrus sum, qui mē ipsō potentiōrēs sunt. 11. Haec nova domus novem pedibus altior est quam illa vetus.

**356. Review of Ablative Constructions.**— Make a list of all the uses of the ablative that have been named up to this point, and find an example of each in section 355.

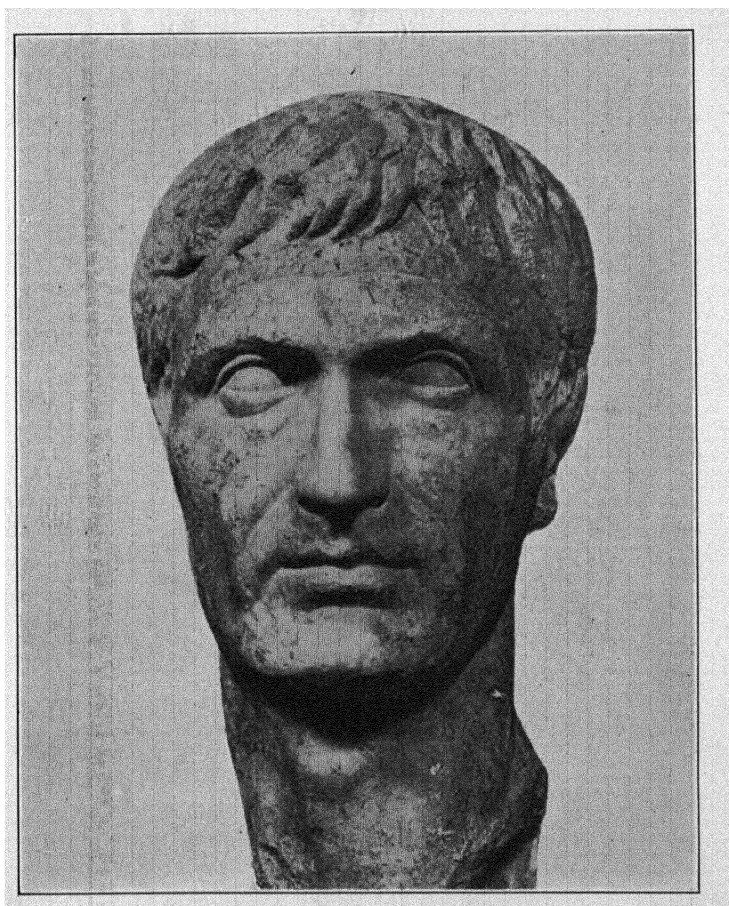
**357.** 1. I shall never report this to any one. 2. We retreated within the walls with some loss. 3. Each one looked out for himself. 4. I have not done anything worse than this. 5. I persuaded them not to inform any one. 6. In the fifth year of the civil war there was already some hope of peace. 7. He selects a certain young man, twenty years old, to announce this affair to his colleagues one by one. 8. If anything happens,<sup>2</sup> tell me at once. 9. There was a certain force in their reply.

## SCIPIO, MARIUS, SULLA

Tertium Pūnicum bellum susceptum est annō quinquāgēnsimō primō postquam secundum cōfectum est. Cōsulēs exercitum in Āfricam trādūxērunt atque Karthāginem oppug-

<sup>1</sup> *with him*, the *adulēscēns*. The reflexive in a subordinate clause may refer to the subject of its own clause or, if the subordinate clause expresses the thought of the subject of the principal clause, it may refer to that subject.

<sup>2</sup> See section 155.



SULLA



dātēs pācem ā Rōmānis petere coāctus cōpiās suās ex reliquā Asiā dēducere atque intrā suōs finis rēgnāre iussus est.

Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā superat, C. Marius et L. Cornēlius Cinna cōsul bellum in Italiā renovāvērunt. Ii in urbem recepti nōbilissimōs ex senātū interfēcērunt; ipsius 5 Sullae domum dēlēvērunt, filiōs et uxōrem fugā salūtem petere coēgērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex mediā caede fugiēns in Graeciam ad Sullam vēnit petiitque ut patriam ē manibus hostium ēriperet. Sulla in Italiam exercitum trādūxit adversāriōsque multis proeliis vicit. Brevi tempore urbem 10 occupāvit et ingentem cīvium caedem fēcit.

## LESSON LIII

**358. Verb-Endings.** — Make a table showing the personal ending and the tense-sign (where there is one) in each regular form of the indicative, subjunctive, and present imperative. This table should begin as follows:—

## PRES. IND.

ACT.	PASS.
ō	r
s	ris <i>or</i> re
t	tur
mus	mur
tis	mini
nt	ntur

## PAST IND.

bam	bar
bās	bāris <i>or</i> -bāre
bat	bātur
bāmus	bāmur
bātis	bāmini
bant	bantur

FUT. IND.			
I, II	III, IV	I, II	III, IV
bō	am	bor	ar
bis	ēs	beris <i>or</i> bere	ēris <i>or</i> ēre
bit	et	bitur	ētur
bimus	ēmus	bimur	ēmur
bitis	ētis	bimini	ēmini
bunt	ent	buntur	entur

**359. Synopsis of Verbs.**— The synopsis of a verb is a summary of its conjugation given in some particular person and number. The following is a synopsis of *amō* in the first person singular :—

IND.		
	ACT.	PASS.
PRES.	amō	amor
PAST	amābam	amābar
FUT.	amābō	amābor
PERF.	amāvī	amātus sum
PAST PERF.	amāveram	amātus eram
FUT. PERF.	amāverō	amātus erō
SUBJ.		
PRES.	amem	amer
PAST	amārem	amārer
PERF.	amāverim	amātus sim
PAST PERF.	amāvissem	amātus essem

### Exercises

**360.** Tell in what forms of the verb the following endings are found : *-ērunt, -erint, -rent, -istis, -issētis, -re, -mini, -am, -ēs, -ētur, -rētur, -bō, -erō, -it, -bit, -erit.*

**361.** Give a comparative synopsis of the model verbs of the four regular conjugations in the first person singular : *amō, moneō, regō, audiō ; amābam, monēbam, etc.*

362. Give synopses of *cōgō* and *probō* in the third person singular by voices: *cōgit*, *cōgēbat*, *etc.*

363. Give synopses of *accipiō* and *reperiō* in the second person plural by moods: *accipitis*, *accipimini*, *accipiēbātis*, *accipiēbāmini*, *etc.*

364. Give synopses of *creō* and *augeō* in the first person plural by tenses: *creāmus*, *creāmur*, *creēmus*, *creēmur*; *creābāmus*, *etc.*

## LESSON LIV

365. **Present Infinitive Passive.** — Learn the present infinitive passive of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, and *capiō* (sections 489, 490, 491).

How can the passive present infinitive be formed from the active in the first, second, and fourth conjugations? What is its ending in the third conjugation?

### 366.

### Vocabulary

<i>Belgae</i> , -ārum, m. pl., <i>the Belgae</i> , <i>the Belgians</i> , a people of Gaul.	<i>prope</i> , adv., <i>near</i> , <i>nearly</i> , <i>almost</i> . [ <i>propinquus</i> ].
<i>cottidiē</i> , adv., <i>daily</i> . [ <i>diēs</i> ].	<i>propior</i> , <i>propius</i> , comparative, with dat., <sup>1</sup> <i>nearer</i> .
<i>dolor</i> , <i>doloris</i> , m., <i>pain</i> , <i>grief</i> . <i>dole-</i> <i>ful</i> .	<i>proximus</i> , -a, -um, with dat., <i>nearest</i> , <i>next</i> . <i>proximity</i> .
<i>inter sē</i> , <i>among themselves</i> , <i>one</i> <i>another</i> .	<i>prōvincia</i> , -ae, f., <i>province</i> .
<i>mōs</i> , <i>mōris</i> , m., <i>custom</i> . <i>morals</i> .	
<i>adfiō</i> , <i>adficere</i> , <i>adfēci</i> , <i>adfectum</i> , <i>visit</i> , <i>afflict</i> . [ <i>ad</i> + <i>faciō</i> ].	
<i>dīvidō</i> , <i>dīvidere</i> , <i>dīvisi</i> , <i>dīvisum</i> , <i>divide</i> .	
<i>incolō</i> , <i>incolere</i> , <i>incoluī</i> , <i>inhabit</i> , <i>dwel</i> . <i>colony</i> .	
<i>permovēō</i> , <i>permovēre</i> , <i>permōvi</i> , <i>permōtum</i> , <i>influence</i> ; also <i>disturb</i> , <i>alarm</i> . [ <i>per</i> + <i>movēō</i> ].	
<i>putō</i> , <i>putāre</i> , <i>putāvi</i> , <i>putātum</i> , <i>think</i> . <i>reputation</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> See section 89.

## Exercises

367. 1. Dic nōbis utrum hōrum oppidōrum propius sit. 2. Gallia est divisa<sup>1</sup> in partis trīs. 3. Aliquis dicit, "Belgae ūnam partem incolunt." 4. Aliquis dicit Belgās ūnam partem incolere (*see 368*). 5. Dixit Belgās ūnam partem incolere. 6. Intereā repperit eōs cum Germānis prope cottidiē contendere. 7. Hī omnēs mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilēs sunt. 8. Scripsit hōs omnīs mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilīs esse. 9. Rōmānī sē intrā prōvinciam continent. 10. Fac eum certiōrem Rōmānōs sē intrā prōvinciam continēre. 11. Putāsne populum Rōmānum magis auctōritāte vestrā quam suō timōre permovēri? 12. Neque in caede illā belli cīvilis erat quisquam quī dolōre nōn adficerētur. 13. Sī quid audivit, statim ad proximum magistrātum nūntium mittit.

368. **Indirect Statements.**— Sentence 3 contains a direct quotation, or one that gives the exact words of the person who makes the statement. In sentences 4 and 5 the same statement is quoted indirectly — that is, the original words are changed so that their construction depends upon the verb of saying (*says the Belgians to inhabit*, that is *says that the Belgians inhabit*; *said the Belgians to inhabit*, that is *said that the Belgians inhabited*). Notice that the Latin indirect statement differs from the English in these particulars: —

1. No conjunction corresponding to English *that* is used to introduce it.
2. Its subject is accusative, not nominative.
3. Its verb is infinitive, not indicative.
4. The tense of the infinitive is not affected by the tense of the verb of saying.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here a predicate adjective; *is divided*, not *has been divided*.

Indirect statements depend upon verbs expressing the ideas of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving. Note the Latin verbs which are followed by indirect statements in the sentences above.

What is the clause depending upon the verb of saying in sentence 1 called? How does it differ from an indirect statement?

369. 1. I thought that the Belgians were awaiting your arrival. 2. They say that you are near. 3. He understands that Gaul is divided into three parts. 4. A certain prisoner reported that they were meanwhile seizing the nearest towns one by one. 5. He learns that their customs are much nearer ours. 6. His wife writes daily that she is afflicted with grief. 7. He shows us that this tribe inhabits a great part of the province. 8. He understood why the Belgians were exchanging<sup>1</sup> hostages. 9. I see that they are especially influenced by your authority.

## LESSON LV

370. **Perfect and Future Infinitives.** — Learn the perfect and future infinitives, active and passive, of *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*, *caplō* (sections 489, 490, 491); and the perfect and future infinitives of *sum* (section 493).

What is the ending of the perfect infinitive active? How are the perfect infinitive passive and the future infinitive active formed? The participle in these forms agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case. The first part of the future infinitive passive can be got from the perfect participle, but it is not the participle and does not agree with the subject.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is *giving one another*.

## 371.

## Vocabulary

angustus, -a, -um, <i>narrow</i> . [angustiae].	perpetuus, -a, -um, <i>unbroken, continual</i> . perpetuato.
finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>neighbors</i> . [finis].	principātus, -ūs, m., <i>leadership</i> . [primus + capiō].
mercātor, mercātōris, m., <i>trader</i> . commerce.	prō, prep. with abl., <i>in proportion to, considering</i> . <sup>2</sup>
minus, <sup>1</sup> adv., <i>less</i> . diminish.	trāns, prep. with acc., <i>across</i> . [trādūcō].
minimē, <sup>1</sup> adv., <i>least, very little</i> . minimize.	
opiniō, opiniōnis, f., <i>opinion</i> ; also <i>reputation</i> .	
cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvi, cōfirmātum, <i>strengthen, establish</i> . confirmation.	
spērō, spērāre, spērāvi, spērātum, <i>hope</i> . [spēs].	

## Exercises

372. Give all the infinitives of cōfirmō, reperiō, pōnō, moveō, and ēripiō.

373. 1. Belgae dicunt mercātōrēs ad sē minimē saepe ventūrōs esse (see 374). 2. Reperiēbam Belgās perpetuum bellum cum finitimīs gessisse. 3. Galli sē prō multitūdine hominum finis angustōs habēre dicunt. 4. Quidam scribit mājōrēs nostrōs summō suppliciō malōs civis adfēcisse. 5. Tanta erat eōrum virtūtis opiniō<sup>3</sup> apud Gallōs ut perpetuum principātum obtinērent. 6. Eae gentēs quae trāns flūmen incolunt inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 7. Galli dixērunt castra quam celerrimē (see 375) oppugnātum iri. 8. Frūmentum cottidiē inter miserōs civis dividitur. 9. Eae civitatēs quae proximae sunt prōvinciae sē cum populō Rōmānō

<sup>1</sup> Minus and minimē are from minor and minimus, comparative and superlative of parvus.

<sup>2</sup> What other meanings of this word have been given already? See section 146.

<sup>3</sup> May be translated *their reputation for bravery*.

pācem cōfirmātūrās<sup>1</sup> spērāvērunt. 10. Putō eōs nōn minus dolōre quam timōre permōtōs.<sup>1</sup>

**374. Use of Infinitive Tenses.** — The tense of the infinitive indicates time with reference only to the time of the verb on which the infinitive depends: —

1. The present infinitive represents an action at the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. The perfect infinitive represents an action before the time of the verb on which it depends.

3. The future infinitive represents an action after the time of the verb on which it depends.

AT THE TIME

**Dicit sē scribere,** *he says that he is writing, he says that he writes.*

**Dixit sē scribere,** *he said that he was writing, he said that he wrote.*

BEFORE THE TIME

**Dicit sē scripsisse,** *he says that he has written, he says that he wrote.*

**Dixit sē scripsisse,** *he said that he had written, he said that he wrote.*

AFTER THE TIME

**Dicit sē scriptūrum esse,** *he says that he shall write.*

**Dixit sē scriptūrum esse,** *he said that he should write.*

Notice that when the verb on which it depends represents a past action, the English past may stand for the Latin present infinitive or perfect infinitive. Therefore, before you put into Latin *he said that he wrote*, for instance, you must determine whether the speaker was writing at the time he spoke, or had already written.

Find all the indirect statements in the sentences above, and tell the reason for the tense of the infinitive in each.

**375. Quam with Superlative.** — In sentence 7 **quam celerrimē** may be translated *as quickly as possible*. **Quam** is often used with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs to indicate the highest possible degree.

<sup>1</sup> **Esse** is often omitted in future active and perfect passive infinitives.

376. 1. Some one said that the customs of the Gauls and Belgians were nearly the same. 2. We hope that each state will strengthen the alliance with its neighbors. 3. If any one has this opinion concerning me, I hope that he will not hesitate to speak. 4. I saw that they had chosen the nearer hill. 5. And he does not see any one across the river except a few traders. 6. I think that they had very narrow boundaries, considering their reputation for bravery. 7. I hear that he is less eager for the leadership than in former years. 8. He said that there would be unbroken peace. 9. You collected as large a number of soldiers as possible.

## LESSON LVI

377. **Deponent Verbs.** — Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning.<sup>1</sup> They are found in all four conjugations, and are inflected like the passive of other verbs (see section 492), except that: —

1. They have the active participles as well as the passive.
2. The future infinitive is active in form.

### 378. Vocabulary

aut . . . aut, <i>either . . . or.</i>	profectiō, profectiōnis, f., <i>departure.</i>
firmus, -a, -um, <i>strong.</i> [cōfirmō].	quod, conj., <i>because.</i>
plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>common people.</i>	undique, adv., <i>from all sides, on all sides.</i>
plebeian.	

adorior, adoriri, adortus sum,<sup>2</sup> *attack.*

arbitror, arbitrari, arbitratus sum, *think. arbitrary.*

cōnor, cōnari, cōnatus sum, *try.*

polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow. sequence.*

vagor, vagari, vagatus sum, *roam. vagrant.*

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive has its usual passive meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Notice that only three forms are given as the principal parts of a deponent verb, since the perfect participle appears in the perfect indicative.

## Exercises

**379.** Give synopses, together with all participles and infinitives, of **arbitror** in the first person singular, **polliceor** in the second person plural, and **sequor** in the third person plural.

**380.** 1. Intrā angustōs finis montibus altissimīs undique continēmur. 2. His dē causis illa gēns minus lātē vagābātur. 3. Arbitror eōs eā dē causā magnō dolōre adfectōs. 4. Is principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximā apud plēbem grātiā erat. 5. Galli auctōritāte eius permōti omnia ad<sup>1</sup> profectiōnem quam celerrimē comparant. 6. Cōnāre<sup>2</sup> hās civitātēs conciliāre, quod prope firmissimae sunt tōtius Galliae. 7. Finitimīs persuāsērunt ut idem cōnārentur. 8. Pollicēmini<sup>3</sup> vōs pācem perpetuam cōservātūrōs. 9. Flūmen proximās civitātēs ā prōvinciā nostrā dividit. 10. Belgae mercātōrēs finibus suis prohibent. 11. Sequere<sup>2</sup> cum omnibus tuis cōpiis, adorire hostis vagantis. 12. Propiōrēs civitātēs aut frūmentum aut militēs pollicitae sunt.

**381.** 1. Follow the customs of your ancestors, try to strengthen your friendship with the common people. 2. I think that they will roam more widely. 3. The barbarians who inhabit these towns suddenly attacked us. 4. Promise that you will follow me across the river. 5. We thought that everything had been prepared for departure. 6. Considering its size, the garrison is very strong. 7. They came together from all sides daily, because they wished to hear the news. 8. Having promised their aid, they sent either money or soldiers. 9. I hope that I shall have the highest reputation for justice.<sup>3</sup> 10. They love one another very little.

<sup>1</sup> for.<sup>2</sup> Imperative.<sup>3</sup> See section 373, sentence 5.

## LESSON LVII

**382. Semi-Deponent Verbs.** — The four verbs *audeō*, *gaudeō*, *soleō*, and *fidō* have active forms in the present, past, and future, but are deponent in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect.

**383.****Vocabulary**

*mūnus, mūneris, n., task, duty.*<sup>1</sup> *propterea quod, for the reason that, because.* [*propter + is*].  
*immunity.*

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare.* [*audāx*].

*fidō, fidere, fisis sum, with dat.,*<sup>2</sup> *trust.* [*fidēs*].

*fruor, fruī, fructus sum, with abl., enjoy. fruition.*

*fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, with abl., perform. function.*

*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad.*

*potior, potiri, potitus sum, with abl., get possession of, get.* [*potestās*].

*soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.*

*ūtō, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl., use.*

*vescor, vescī, with abl., eat.*

**Exercises**

**384.** 1. *Hostēs facilius sequēbantur, quod equis (see 385) ūtī solēbant.* 2. *Cupiditāte rēgnī<sup>8</sup> adductus rēgem aut expellere aut interficere cōnātus est.* 3. *Plūrimis rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur.* 4. *Nostra opiniō virtūtis ita cōfirmāta erat ut hostēs nōs adoriri nōn audērent.* 5. *Tibi fidō propterea quod mūnere illō prō rē pūblicā susceptō fūctus es.* 6. *Gaudēmus quod<sup>4</sup> pāx perpetua cum finitimis nostris est.* 7. *Nostri quam lātissimē vagantēs magnā praedā potiti sunt.* 8. *Arbitrātur esse facile principātū tōtius Galliae potiri.* 9. *Frūmentō vescēbāmur quod mercātōrēs comparāverant.*

<sup>1</sup> What other meaning of this word has been given already ?

<sup>2</sup> See section 224.

<sup>8</sup> See page 54, foot-note 4.

<sup>4</sup> May here be translated *that*.

**385. Ablative with Certain Deponents.**—The ablative *equis* in sentence 1 is governed by *ūti* (*to use horses*). Notice that in the English translation the verb *use* is transitive, and *horses* is its direct object. The sentences above contain the other deponent verbs which govern the ablative. What are they?

What other Latin verbs do you know that are intransitive, but translated as transitive? What case do they govern?

**386.** 1. We are glad that the time of departure has come. 2. We hope that he will get possession of entire Gaul. 3. He is away so often that we enjoy him less. 4. I was accustomed to trust him least of all my friends. 5. The common people perform the duty of slaves. 6. The old man<sup>1</sup> is very strong, considering his years. 7. There was nothing that he did not dare to eat. 8. He will use the ships which he has collected. 9. We do not trust his plan, for the reason that he is a man of narrow mind. 10. They promised that they would remain across the river.

## THE PLOT OF ORGETORIX

Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partis trīs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam īī quī ab sē Celtae, ab nōbīs<sup>2</sup> Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs sunt mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilēs. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen dividit, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe veniunt; proximīque sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum perpetuum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant, quod ferē cottidiē cum Germānis con-

<sup>1</sup> *senex*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the Romans. This reading-lesson and those which follow are adapted from Caesar, and narrate events from the Roman standpoint.

tendunt, dum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is rēgni cupiditate inductus nōbilis sibi conciliāvit, et civitatē  
 5 persuāsit ut finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis excēderent. Dixit esse facile tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri, dēmōstrāvitque Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre. Facilius iis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiō-  
 10 rum ā Germānis dividit; aliā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā ex parte Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus accidit ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile cum finitimis bellum gererent. Itaque  
 15 magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne hominum et prō opiniōne virtūtis angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrābantur.

His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt omnis rēs ad profectiōnem comparāre, quam plūrimum frūmentum cōgere, ut in itinere cōpiam habērent, cum  
 20 proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Tertium annum profectiōni lēge cōstituērunt. Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscipit. Persuādet Casticō Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum  
 25 in civitate suā occupāret,<sup>1</sup> quod pater antea habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduō, frātri Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in civitate obtinēbat ac maximā apud plēbem erat grātiā, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eique filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et  
 30 tōtius Galliae imperiō sēsē potitūrōs esse spērānt.

---

<sup>1</sup> When the principal verb is a historical present, its meaning is usually regarded rather than its form, and then the past or past perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause.

## LESSON LVIII

**387. The Irregular Verbs *possum* and *prōsum*.** — Learn the conjugation of *possum*, *be able* (section 494). Notice that the spelling is *pos* before the forms of *sum* which begin with *s* and in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, *pot* elsewhere; and that the perfect does not have *f*.

*Prōsum*, *benefit*, has *prōd* before the forms of *sum* which begin with *e* (section 495).

## 388.

## Vocabulary

aedificium, -i, n., <i>building</i> . [aedi- ficō].	ignis, ignis, <sup>1</sup> m., <i>fire</i> . <i>ignite</i> . nōn nullī, <i>some, several</i> .
ante, prep. with acc., <i>before</i> . [anteā].	ūnā, adv., <i>together, in company</i> . [ūnus].
circiter, adv., <i>about</i> . <i>circle</i> .	vīcus, -i, m., <i>village</i> . <i>vicinity</i> .
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum, <i>join with, join, unite</i> . [adiungō].	
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptum, <i>consume, waste</i> . [sūmō].	
mōrior, morī, mortuus sum, <i>die</i> . [mors].	
possum, posse, potuī, <i>be able, can</i> . [potestās].	
proficiācor, proficiācī, profectus sum, <i>set out, start</i> . [profectiō].	
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, with dat., <i>benefit</i> . [prō + sum].	
revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, <sup>2</sup> <i>turn back, return</i> . <i>versatile</i> .	

## Exercises

**389.** 1. Dicit aedificium in quō Hannibal sit multōs exitūs habēre. 2. Dixit aedificium in quō Hannibal esset multōs exitūs habēre. 3. Dux ante eōrum profectiōnem mortuus est. 4. Finitimīs persuāsērunt ut aut ūnā sēcum

<sup>1</sup> The ablative singular is *igne* or *igni*.

<sup>2</sup> The first *revertī* is present infinitive, the second is perfect indicative. *Revertor* is deponent in the present, past, and future, but has active forms in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. It is, then, just the opposite of the semi-deponent verbs given in section 382.

proficiscerentur aut frūmentum mitterent. 5. Nōn nūlli quī profectī sunt numquam revertentur. 6. Audimus nōn nullōs quī profectī sint numquam reversūrōs. 7. Facile est imperiō potiri, quod virtūte omnibus praestāmus. 8. Arbitrantur facile esse imperiō potiri, quod virtūte omnibus praestent. 9. Prōdest plēbī hunc ducem sequi, cui omnēs fidere possunt. 10. Ea quae pollicitus erās fēcisti. 11. Intellēxi tē ea quae pollicitus essēs fēcisse. 12. Germānōs sēcum coniungere cōnantur. 13. Postquam circiter quadringenti vicī ignī cōsūptī sunt, hostis undique adortī sunt. 14. Cōnsilium quō imperātor ūsus esset bonum esse arbitrabāmur.

**390. Indirect Subordinate Clauses.**—In sentence 1 the clause in quō Hannibal sit is a part of the quotation. Notice that it is subordinate to the indirect statement *aedificium multōs exitūs habēre*, and that its verb is in the subjunctive.

You must carefully distinguish these three constructions:—

1. Indirect statement (infinitive).
2. Indirect question (subjunctive).
3. Indirect subordinate clause (subjunctive).

Compare sentences 1 and 2, and notice that the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the verb of saying, in accordance with the rule for the harmony of tenses.

Find all the other indirect subordinate clauses in the sentences above.

**391.** 1. I did not dare to trust you. 2. Perform the task which you have been accustomed to neglect. 3. He says that he is performing the task which he has neglected. 4. I am glad that<sup>1</sup> this can benefit you. 5. He said that he was glad that this could benefit you. 6. My friend returned and roamed through the fields in company with me. 7. I

---

<sup>1</sup> See section 384, sentence 6.

think that we enjoy the winter more, for the reason that we are stronger. 8. The grain which they cannot eat they will consume with fire. 9. After they had destroyed the buildings of several villages, they started. 10. They thought that they could defend the allies who had been united with them.<sup>1</sup> 11. He died about ten days<sup>2</sup> before our departure.

## LESSON LIX

## 392.

## Vocabulary

Caesar, Caesaris, m., <i>Caesar</i> , a famous Roman general.	pōns, pontis, m., <i>bridge</i> . <i>pontoon</i> .
expeditus, -a, -um, <i>unobstructed</i> . [impediō].	praeter, prep. with acc., <i>except</i> , <i>besides</i> .
omnīnō, adv., <i>in all, at all</i> . [omnis].	vadum, -ī, n., <i>ford</i> . <i>wade</i> .

concedō, concedere, concessi, concessum, *yield, grant*. [excēdō].

pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātum, *pacify, subdue*. [pāx].

## Exercises

393. 1. Caesar Galliā pācātā (see 394) in Italiam revertit. 2. Imperātōre absente nihil facere audēmus. 3. Tē duce tōtā Galliā potiri poterimus. 4. Vicis suis numerō<sup>3</sup> circiter quadringentis incēnsīs domō proficiscuntur. 5. Vadis repertis ponte nōn iam ūtuntur. 6. Galli iter per prōvinciam facient, proptereā quod aliud iter habent nūllum. 7. Nōn nūllis aedificiis igni cōnsūptis in prōvinciam itinere expeditissimō contendunt. 8. Cōpiis coniūctis iter ūnā cum sociis fēcimus. 9. Erat omnīnō in Galliā nūlla legiō praeter hanc. 10. Hāc rē concessā barbari sē ab iniūriā prohibēbunt. 11. Dicit sē frūmentum quō militēs vescantur dare.

<sup>1</sup> See page 119, foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Use the ablative of measure of difference.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of respect.

**394. Ablative Absolute.** — In sentence 1 the words *Galliā pācātā* are in the construction called ablative absolute, which corresponds to the nominative absolute in English. The literal translation is *Gaul subdued* or *Gaul having been subdued*; but we may translate more freely *having subdued Gaul, after subduing Gaul, after Gaul had been subdued, when Gaul had been subdued, or since Gaul had been subdued*. Notice that *Caesar having subdued Gaul* cannot be put into Latin without a change in the construction, because Latin has no perfect active participle. In sentence 2 *imperātōre absente* is literally *the general absent* or *the general being absent*; but we may say *while the general is absent, when the general is absent, since the general is absent, though the general is absent, if the general is absent, or in the general's absence*. In sentence 3 *tē dūce* may be translated *since you are our leader, if you are our leader, or under your leadership*. The literal translation is *you leader, that is you being leader*, but there is no present participle of *sum* to correspond to *being*.

These three sentences show the general features of the ablative absolute: —

1. It consists of a noun or pronoun with a participle, noun, or adjective in agreement.
2. The noun or pronoun denotes a person or thing not mentioned elsewhere in the clause.
3. The word in agreement is in the nature of a predicate.
4. The translation must be varied to suit the meaning of the sentence. When the Latin has a perfect passive participle, the best translation is often an active participle, with the noun or pronoun as its object. Most ablatives absolute may be translated by a subordinate clause of time, cause, opposition, or condition.

Find all other ablatives absolute in the sentences above.

**395.** 1. Our leader dead,<sup>1</sup> our armies routed, we yielded to the victor at last. 2. Having subdued us, Caesar withdrew into Italy. 3. He does not trust himself in your absence. 4. If the bridge has been destroyed,<sup>2</sup> hasten to

<sup>1</sup> That is *having died*.

<sup>2</sup> Use the ablative absolute.

the ford before night. 5. When the roads were unobstructed,<sup>1</sup> they were accustomed to march day and night. 6. Since you are wretched,<sup>1</sup> I can enjoy these things very little. 7. It will benefit no one at all except you. 8. I performed this duty with your approval.<sup>2</sup> 9. Having learned this, I was glad.

## LESSON LX

**396. The Irregular Verb *ferō*.** — Learn the indicative, subjunctive, present imperative, infinitive, and participles, active and passive, of *ferō*, *bear* (section 497).

Notice that this verb has, for the most part, the regular forms of the third conjugation, but is irregular in certain forms of the present indicative and imperative and in the present infinitive and past subjunctive:—

1. The present stem does not have a final vowel before *r*, *s*, and *t*.
2. The singular of the present imperative active is *fer*, not *fere* (see section 348).
3. The present infinitive passive is *ferri*, not *feri*.

**397.****Vocabulary**

*nūper*, adv., *recently*.

*praetereā*, adv., *besides*. [*praeter* + *is*].

*existimō*, *existimāre*, *existimāvī*, *existimātum*, *think*. *estimate*.

*ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *bear*, *carry*. *transfer*.

*effērō*, *efferre*, *extulī*, *ēlātum*, *carry away*. [*ex* + *ferō*].

*licet*, *licere*, *licuit* or *licitum est*,<sup>3</sup> *it is permitted*. *license*.

*patior*, *pati*, *passus sum*, *suffer*, *allow*. *patience*.

*pertineō*, *pertinere*, *pertinui*, *extend*. [*per* + *teneō*].

*tollō*, *tollere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*, *raise*; also *remove*. *extol*.

<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> Say *you approving*.

<sup>3</sup> *Licet* is an impersonal verb. An impersonal verb is one that is used without a subject or with an infinitive or a clause as its subject, and has therefore only the forms of the third person singular and the infinitives. In English *it* is used with an impersonal verb.

## Exercises

398. 1. Helvētīi frūmentum omne praeter id quod sēcum ēlātūri sunt ignī cōnsūmunt. 2. Spē fugae sublātā parātīōrēs ad omnia perīcula erimus. 3. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētīōs pertinet. 4. Helvētīi exīstimābant eam civitātem quae nūper pācāta esset nōn bonō animō<sup>1</sup> esse. 5. Iis persuādēbimus ut per suōs finis nōs iter facere patiantur. 6. Tibi ūnī hoc concēdam, nēmini praetereā. 7. Sunt omnīnō circiter quīngentī hominēs quī arma ferre possint. 8. Id quod mihi prōdest sequor, fugiōque id quod mihi nocet. 9. Ante hiemem ūnā mēcum in Galliam proficiscētur. 10. Nōbis licēbat iter in Galliam facere. 11. Petimus ut nōbis liceat expeditiōre itinere reverti.

399 1. They order all to carry grain besides. 2. You may<sup>2</sup> burn all the buildings of your villages. 3. But we shall not allow you to march through our territory. 4. We think that they can be led across by a ford. 5. They had recently made a bridge to join<sup>3</sup> the two towns. 6. This wood extends from the river even to the town. 7. Caesar's arrival removed all fear. 8. My brother having died, I hastened home. 9. Some think that he was carried away by the desire for power.

## CAESAR'S ARRIVAL IN GAUL

Orgetorix autem ante profectiōnem Helvētīōrum mortuus est. Post ēius mortem tamen id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur domōsque suās relinquere parant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō circiter duodecim, vicōs circiter quadringentōs, reliqua aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter id quod sēcum

<sup>1</sup> Descriptive ablative; of good mind, that is well-disposed.

<sup>2</sup> Say it is permitted to you to.

<sup>3</sup> Do not use the infinitive.





CAESAR

ēlātūrī erant, ignī cōnsūmunt, ut fugae spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula essent; satis frūmenti sibi<sup>1</sup> quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent finitimis ut oppidis suis vicisque incēnsis<sup>2</sup> ūnā cum iis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant, sibi societāte adiungunt. 5

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō excēdere possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum (mōns altissimus tam propinquus erat ut facile pauci prohibēre<sup>3</sup> possent); alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod 10 inter finis Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, est Rhodanus, cōpiaequē nōn nūllis locis vadō trādūci possunt. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē aut persuāsūrōs, 15 quod nōn bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,<sup>4</sup> existimābant aut vi coāctūrōs ut per suōs finis eōs iter facere paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem cōstituunt, quā<sup>5</sup> diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant.

Caesari ubi id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram 20 iter facere cōnārī, properat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit et Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum militum numerum imperat<sup>6</sup> (erat omnīnō in Galliā legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet dēlērī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs facti 25 sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātis, qui dicerent sē in animō habere sine ūllā iniūriā iter per prōvinciam

<sup>1</sup> *for himself.*

<sup>2</sup> The perfect participle is often to be translated by the form of the verb that can be connected by *and* with the principal verb of the clause. Here the best translation is *to burn and set out.*

<sup>3</sup> That is *prevent them from passing.*

<sup>4</sup> See page 73, foot-note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *Diēs* is commonly feminine when it denotes a fixed day.

<sup>6</sup> May be translated *levied upon the province.*

facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; sē petere ut id sibi facere liceret. Caesar hoc concēdendum esse nōn putābat; neque eōs itinere per prōvinciam datō sē prohibitorōs ab iniuriā existimābat. Tamen, nē proelium committere cōgerētur ante adventum militum quōs imperāverat, lēgātis respondit sē haec cōgitātūrum. Certam diem cōstituit, quā reverterentur.

## LESSON LXI

## 400.

## Vocabulary

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., <i>sight</i> . <i>conspicuous</i> .	paene, adv., <i>almost</i> . <i>peninsula</i> .
cum, conj., <i>since, as</i> ; also <i>although, though</i> .	praesertim, adv., <i>especially</i> . servitūs, servitūtis, f., <i>slavery</i> . [servus].

dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum, *distribute, arrange*. [pōnō].  
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, *finish, complete*. [per + faciō].  
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repulse*. [pellō].

## Exercises

401. 1. Servitūtem diūtius nōn feram, praesertim cum nōs liberārī posse videam. 2. Nēminem timeō praeter deum solum. 3. Cum apud eōs plūrimum posset,<sup>1</sup> tamen nihil effēcit. 4. Caesar, cum hostēs iter impediānt, tamen in Galliam veniet. 5. Cum<sup>2</sup> nōbis persuādēre nōn possent, cōsiliō dēstitērunt. 6. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, quae Helvētiōs tēlis repellant. 7. Cum in fidē et amicitīā populi Rōmāni simus, tamen puerōs nostrōs paene in cōspectū exercitūs tuī in servitūtem dūcī pateris. 8. Cum vada reperire nōn possint, pontem faciunt. 9. Quae cum ita sint, vitam tibi concēdam, praetereā nihil. 10. Cum Gallia pācāta sit, Caesar in Italiam revertitur.

<sup>1</sup> *was most powerful or was very powerful.*

<sup>2</sup> How can you tell that this is not the preposition?

**402. Causal and Adversative *cum*-Clauses.** — Notice that the clauses introduced by *cum* in the sentences above express the cause of the action represented by the principal verb or an idea opposed to the action, and that the verbs of these clauses are in the subjunctive.

**403.** 1. If it is permitted, we shall carry away these things. 2. Although the works had been completed, they did not extend to the river. 3. As the guards have been carefully<sup>1</sup> arranged, the enemy can easily be driven back. 4. Since they were so near, we could not avoid the missiles. 5. This, although it happened almost in sight of the city, they did not see. 6. I think that they will follow, especially since the roads are unobstructed. 7. Slavery is not easily borne. 8. Recently he has not been able to raise himself at all.

## LESSON LXII

**404. The Irregular Verb *eō*.** — Learn the indicative, subjunctive, present imperative, infinitive, and participles of *eō*, *go* (section 498).

Notice that *ii* becomes *i* before *s* in the perfect infinitive, the past perfect subjunctive, and the second person of the perfect indicative.

### 405.

### Vocabulary

altitudō, altitudinis, f., <i>height, depth</i> . [altus].	hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., <i>winter quarters</i> . [hiems].
beneficium, -i, n., <i>kindness</i> . [bene + faciō].	mūnitio, mūnitōnis, f., <i>fortification, defenses</i> . [mūniō].
cum, conj., <i>when</i> . <sup>2</sup>	natio, natiōnis, f., <i>people, nation</i> .
eō, ire, ii, itum, <i>go</i> . [exitus].	
trānseō, trānsire, trānsii, trānsitum, <i>go across, cross</i> . [trāns + eō].	
vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, <i>ravage, devastation</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative of manner.    <sup>2</sup> What other meanings has this word?

## Exercises

406. 1. Caesar cum omnis eōrum agrōs vāstāvisset (*see 407*), legiōnēs in hiberna dēdūxit. 2. Caesar, cum Gallia pācāta esset, in Italiam revertit. 3. Praetereā aliae nātiōnēs, cum imperium populi Rōmāni augērētur, novīs rēbus<sup>1</sup> studēbant. 4. Ab oppidō ad montem mīlia passuum decem mūrum fossamque dūxit.<sup>2</sup> 5. Cum hās mūnitiōnēs perfēcisset, sē posse eōs repellere existimābat. 6. Helvētīi eā spē sublātā vadīs, ubi minima altitudō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnāti sunt. 7. Sēquanīs persuādēre poterit, praesertim cum grātiā apud eōs plūrimum possit. 8. Cum socii nostrī in periculō essent, auxiliū tulimus. 9. Sēquanī cum Dumnorigis beneficiō conciliāti essent, Helvētiōs per suōs finīs ire passī sunt. 10. Cum ego in servitūtem dūcerer, tuae salūti cōnsuluisti.

407. *Cum*-Clauses of Situation. — In sentence 1 the clause introduced by *cum* describes the situation at the time of the action represented by the main verb (*when Caesar had ravaged, Caesar having ravaged*). Often the description of the situation includes the idea of cause or opposition: for instance, *cum Gallia pācāta esset* in sentence 2 may mean both *when Gaul had been subdued* and *since Gaul had been subdued*. In this way the *cum*-clause came to express the special idea of cause or opposition (see section 402). Any tense of the subjunctive is used in causal and adversative *cum*-clauses, but in *cum*-clauses of situation only the past or past perfect.

Notice that *cum Gallia pācāta esset* in sentence 2 expresses the same idea as *Galliā pācātā* in section 393, sentence 1; and that *Sēquanī conciliāti* would express the same idea as *Sēquanī cum conciliāti essent* in sentence 9. *Cum* with the subjunctive is often equivalent to a participle.

<sup>1</sup> *new things*, that is, *a revolution*.

<sup>2</sup> *made*, but *dūxit* expresses the idea of carrying forward, or extending.

408. 1. I met him in the city recently. 2. When he had died, we went into the province. 3. When I inquired, I learned that his kindnesses extended to the most wretched. 4. While it is permitted, enjoy the sight. 5. When the legions had been distributed, they fortified winter quarters. 6. Although the enemy had been repulsed, they began again to cross the river. 7. When they saw the great height of the defenses, they almost despaired. 8. When you had ravaged the fields of these peoples, you carried away your plunder with you.

## LESSON LXIII

409. The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*. — Learn the conjugation of *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *be unwilling*; *mālō*, *prefer* (section 496).

Notice that these verbs have irregular forms in the present of all moods and in the past subjunctive.

What other verbs have *ī* in the present subjunctive?

## 410.

## Vocabulary

*circum*, prep. with acc., *about*. *quō*, conj., *in order that, so that, that*.  
[*circumveniō*].

*ēdūcō*, *ēdūcere*, *ēdūxī*, *ēductum*, *lead out, bring out*. [*ē + dūcō*].

*hiemō*, *hiemāre*, *hiemāvī*, *hiemātum*, *spend the winter, winter*. [*hiems*].

*inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *inlātum*, with dat.,<sup>1</sup> *bring upon, inflict upon*; *bellum inferre*, *make war upon*. [*in + ferō*].

*volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, *be willing, wish*. [*voluntās*].

*nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, *be unwilling, not wish*.

*mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*, *wish rather, prefer*. [*magis + volō*].

## Exercises

411. 1. Caesar praesidia dispōnit, quō facilius Helvētiis resistat. 2. Sē nōlle iter cuiquam per prōvinciam dare

<sup>1</sup> See section 241.

dicit. 3. Et si vim facere cōentur, sē prohibitūrum dēmōnstrat. 4. Caesar cum Helvētiōs trānsire audīret, cōs prohibēre voluit. 5. Legiōnēs quās accēperat circum illam urbem hiemābant. 6. Cum legiōnēs ex hiberniis ēdūxisset, proximō itinere in Galliam ire contendit. 7. Caesarem certiorē faciunt sē agris vāstātis Helvētiōs repellere nōn posse. 8. Quae cum ita sint, morī quam servitūtem ferre mālō. 9. Beneficia ā malis hominibus accipere nōlumus. 10. Hae nātiōnēs cum Caesari bellum īferrent, complūribus proeliis pulsae sunt.

**412. Quō-Clauses of Purpose.**—Notice that the clause *quō . . . resistat* in sentence 1 expresses purpose, and that it contains the comparative *facilius*. A clause of purpose in which there is a comparative is usually introduced by *quō*, instead of *ut*.

**413.** 1. When the defenses had been completed,<sup>1</sup> the legions were led out and stationed in sight of the enemy. 2. Although the height of the fortification is not great, the enemy can easily be driven back. 3. He is unwilling to inflict injury upon us, especially as we cannot resist. 4. I wish rather to be than to seem<sup>2</sup> good. 5. If you wish, I will spend the winter at home, that I may better defend you. 6. He said that, if we wished, he would send a slave to lead<sup>3</sup> us about the town. 7. Almost all are willing to go.

## THE BEGINNING OF THE HELVETIAN WAR

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā Lemannō ad montem Iūram milia passuum ūndēviginti mūrū pedum sēdecim<sup>4</sup> fossamque dūcit.

<sup>1</sup> Express this in two ways, by an ablative absolute and with *cum*.

<sup>2</sup> See page 73, foot-note 1.

<sup>3</sup> Use a relative clause of purpose.

<sup>4</sup> That is, *in height*.

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella mūnit, quō facilius, si contrā suam voluntātem trānsire cōnārentur,<sup>1</sup> prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, dicit sē nōlle iter cuiquam per prōvinciam dare; et si vim facere<sup>2</sup> cōncentur, sē prohibitū- 5 rum dēmōnstrat. Helvētiī eā spē sublātā, alii nāvibus coniūctis, alii vadis Rhodanī, ubi minima altitudō flūminis erat, saepe noctū trānsire cōnāti sunt. Mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsi hōc cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā contrā Sēquanō- 10 rum voluntātem propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum ipsi persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt. Dumnorix enim grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitate Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditate 15 rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō conciliāre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finis suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent efficit. Sēquanī pollicentur sē itinere Helvētiōs nōn prohibitūrōs; Helvētiī, sē sine ūllā 20 iniūriā trānsitūrōs.

Caesari nūntiātur Helvētiōs in animō habēre per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in eam partem Galliae facere quae nōn longē ā prōvinciā absit. Id si facerent, intellegēbat 25 prōvinciam magnō cum periculō hostis populī Rōmānī finitimōs habitūram. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T.<sup>3</sup> Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs novās comparat, et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in Galliam cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire 30

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive in an indirect subordinate clause. The clause expresses the thought of the subject of the principal clause.

<sup>2</sup> That is, *force the passage*.

<sup>3</sup> The abbreviation for **Titus**.

contendit. Quaedam gentēs quae Alpīs incolunt locīs superioribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. His complūribus proeliis pulsīs ab oppidō Italiae extrēmō in provinciam diē septimō pervenit; inde in finīs eōrum exercitum  
5 dūcit qui sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmi.

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finīs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haedui cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, qui auxilium pete-  
10 rent. Hi dicunt sē in fidē atque amicitīā populī Rōmāni esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, pueri in servitūtem dūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbeant. Eōdem tempore socii eōrum Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē vāstātis agris nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Quibus  
15 rēbus adductus Caesar Helvētiīs bellum inferre cōstituit.

## LESSON LXIV

### 414.

### Vocabulary

explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., *scout*. princeps, pīncipis, m., *leading man, explore.* head. [pīncipātus].

immortālis, immortalē, *immortal*. secundus, -a, -um, *favorable*<sup>1</sup>; secundae rēs, *prosperity*.  
[mors].

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum, *hide, conceal*. [ab + dō].

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *follow up*; also *overtake*. [sequor].

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *intrust*. *mandate*.

### Exercises

415. 1. Cum magna pars eōrum interfecta esset, reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt.<sup>2</sup> 2. Monēbō ut sē abdant, nē capi-

<sup>1</sup> This is the same word that has been learned as an ordinal numeral meaning *second*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, *took to flight*.

antur. 3. Explōrātōrēs praemissī sunt, quī vidērent quam in partem hostēs iter facerent. 4. Pontem facimus, quō facilius eōs cōsequāmur. 5. Cum princeps lēgatiōnis sim, tamen ea quae vultis pollicērī nōn audeō. 6. Ita secundis rēbus ēlātus erās ut ab dīs<sup>1</sup> immortalibus nōn opem peterēs. 7. Cum frūmentum omne incēnsū sit, domī nihil est quō sē sustinēre possint. 8. Putābāsne legiōnēs hiemātūrās in finibus eārum nātiōnum quae superātae essent? 9. Nōbīs bellum inferre nostrōsque agrōs vāstāre nōlent. 10. Frant circum hiberna eius multī collēs. 11. Quis est tam audāx quī altitūdine mūnitiōnum nōn permoveātur? 12. Accidit ut fossam trānsire cōnārentur.

**416. Review of Subjunctive Constructions.** — Make a list of all the uses of the subjunctive that have been named up to this point, and find an example of each in section 415.

**417.** 1. Although he had brought out few ships, yet he did not hesitate to join battle. 2. They persuaded us to intrust this matter to the head of the embassy. 3. He said that he preferred to speak about the kindnesses which he had received. 4. Who is there who thinks that the immortal gods<sup>2</sup> disregard the affairs of men? 5. The gods granted us prosperity, that they might destroy us. 6. When he saw this, Caesar sent the cavalry to sustain the enemy's attack. 7. You can learn from the scouts whether the enemy have hidden themselves. 8. We shall go by the same route, that we may overtake them more quickly.

<sup>1</sup> See section 463.

<sup>2</sup> The words *dī immortalēs* are regularly written in this order.

## LESSON LXV

**418. The Irregular Verb *fiō*.** — Learn the conjugation of *fiō*, *be done*, *be made* (section 499).

*Fiō* is used as the passive of *faciō*; but the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect forms, the future infinitive, and the gerundive are the regular forms of *faciō*.

Notice that the *i* is long, except in *fit* and before *er*.

**419. Vocabulary**

*citrā*, prep. with acc., *on this side of*. *vigilia*, -ae, f., *watch*, a fourth part  
*gravis*, *grave*, *heavy*; also *important*. *gravity*.  
of the night. *vigilant*.

*agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctum*, *drive*; also *treat*. [*redigō*].

*fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *be done*, *be made*; also *result*, *happen*. *fiat*.

*praedicō*, *praedicāre*, *praedicāvī*, *praedicātum*, *declare*; also *boast*. *predicate*.

**Exercises**

**420.** 1. *Mercātōrī est pecūnia* (*see 421*). 2. *Sex nōbīs filii sunt*. 3. *Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit Helvētiōs citrā flūmen esse*. 4. *Hīs rēbus<sup>1</sup> factum est ut sēsē fugae mandārent atque in<sup>2</sup> silvās abderent*. 5. *Nōbīs est in animō cum Caesare dē his rēbus agere*. 6. *Nōnne ab dīs immortālibus vōs ēreptōs praedicābātis?* 7. *Nam dē vestrā virtūte praedicāre nōlēbātis*. 8. *Monent nōs nē principēs cīvitātis gravī supplicio adficiāmus*. 9. *Legiōnem quae circum hoc oppidum hiemat adoriēmur*. 10. *Oppidō satis erit praesidi*. 11. *Secundā vigiliā equitēs ex castris ēdūxit, quō celerius hostis cōsequerētur*. 12. *Quā ex rē fiēbat ut elephantī in mediam aciem agerentur*.

**421. Dative of Possession.** — Sentence 1 means the same as *mercātor pecūniam habet*, and may be translated *the trader has money*.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of cause.

<sup>2</sup> English says *in*, but the accusative is used in Latin because the idea of motion is implied.

What is the literal translation? Notice that in this construction the dative is used to denote the possessor, the verb is **sum**, and the thing possessed is the subject.

Find the other datives of possession in the sentences above.

**422.** 1. He is unwilling to inform me about these important matters. 2. The general will have no friendship with you, if you stay in Gaul. 3. If Caesar has already determined to make war upon us, we ought not to treat with him. 4. I have it<sup>1</sup> in mind to attack them suddenly in the third watch. 5. It resulted that we remained on this side of the Alps. 6. I prefer to see what is being done. 7. You are accustomed to boast about your father. 8. In former times justice had honor.

## LESSON LXVI

**423. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.** — You have learned that the future active participle is used with **sum** to represent an action as about to occur or intended. The inflection of **sum** in combination with the future active participle is called the active periphrastic conjugation: for instance, **monitūrus est**, *he is about to advise, is going to advise, is intending to advise*, is the third person singular, present indicative of the active periphrastic conjugation of **moneō**.

### 424.

### Vocabulary

<b>inīquus</b> , -a, -um, <i>unfair, unfavorable</i>	<b>recēns</b> , <i>recentis, recent.</i>
<i>ble.</i> [aequus].	<b>repentinus</b> , -a, -um, <i>sudden.</i>
<b>nōndum</b> , adv., <i>not yet.</i> [nōn].	<b>vix</b> , adv., <i>hardly.</i>
<b>pāgus</b> , -i, m., <i>district, division.</i>	

**cōnsistō**, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstītī**, *take a position; also halt.* [dēsistō].

**inflūō**, **inflūere**, **inflūxī**, **inflūxum**, *flow into, empty into.* [flūmen].

**prōgrediōr**, **prōgredī**, **prōgressus sum**, *advance.* **prōgress.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

## Exercises

425. 1. Quaerō quid fiat. 2. Nōndum ab explōrātōribus certior factus erat hostis citrā flūmen esse. 3. Dīcit sē tertiā vigiliā itūrum esse.<sup>1</sup> 4. Īdem pāgus cōnsulem populi Rōmāni repentinō impetū oppressum interfēcerat. 5. Hās iniūriās recentiorēs vix ferre possum. 6. Nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem nōn prōgredi vidērunt. 7. Nōn ea neglētūrī sumus quae nōbīs mandāta sunt. 8. Erat mihi tēcum conloquium, ut cognōscerem quid factūrus essēs. 9. Cōsul cum eōs cōsecūtus esset, cōsistere cōstituit. 10. Flūmen ibi trānsitūrī sunt ubi in mare influit.

426. 1. I had not yet learned where the marsh emptied into the river. 2. We shall advance and take a position near the wood in which<sup>2</sup> the enemy have concealed themselves. 3. Our sudden arrival is going to alarm them. 4. The leading men of these districts have been intending to treat with you. 5. The terms were so unfair that we could hardly approve them. 6. I was about to ask why the punishment was so heavy. 7. You were about to speak concerning the recent disaster. 8. Who does not understand that this state is going to be immortal? 9. I am not going to boast about my prosperity.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the present infinitive of the active periphrastic conjugation is used as the future infinitive of the regular conjugation: so *itūrum esse* may be translated either *is intending to go* or *will go*.

<sup>2</sup> See section 420, sentence 4.



## LESSON LXVII

**427. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** — You have learned that the gerundive is used with **sum** to represent an action as necessary or proper. The inflection of **sum** in combination with the gerundive is called the passive periphrastic conjugation: for instance, **monendus est**, *he is to be advised, must be advised, ought to be advised*, is the third person singular, present indicative of the passive periphrastic conjugation of **moneō**.

428.

## Vocabulary

**agmen, agminis, n., column** (of a marching army). [**agō**]. **iugum, -i, n., ridge.**  
**praemium, -i, n., reward. premium.**

**ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum, climb, ascend.**

**instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctum, draw up. structure.**

**mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, deserve. merit.**

**statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, decide, determine. [cōstituō].**

## Exercises

**429.** 1. Ante noctem statuendum est quid faciendum sit. 2. Oppidum mihi (*see 430*) mūniendum est. 3. Caesar explorātōribus certior faciendus est hostis citrā flūmen esse. 4. Tertiā vigiliā eum pāgum adorti erātis. 5. Impetus hostium tam repentinus erat ut agmen perturbāret. 6. Iugum ad quod cōstitimus nōbis est ascendendum. 7. Acies in summō iugō montis instruenda erat. 8. Sibi agendum esse tēcum nōn existimābant. 9. Spērāmus nōbis fore<sup>1</sup> perpetuam vōbiscum societātem. 10. Gravissimō supplicio adficiendī estis. 11. Tibi dē tuā virtūte praedicandum nōn est. 12. Istud praemium vix merēs.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Fore** is often used as the future infinitive of **sum**. What is the regular form?

**430. Dative of Agent.**—In sentence 2 *mihi* denotes the agent. The sentence may be translated *the town is to be fortified by me, the town must be fortified by me, the town ought to be fortified by me*; or changed to the active form, *I must fortify the town, I ought to fortify the town, I have to fortify the town*. With the passive periphrastic conjugation the dative is regularly used to denote the agent, instead of *ab* and the ablative.

Find the other datives of agent in the sentences above, and notice that the sentences in which this construction occurs are often to be changed to the active form in translation. What does the agent become when this change is made? What does the subject become?

**431.** 1. The recent injuries are so great that they ought not to be borne. 2. We must determine<sup>1</sup> what we are going to do. 3. He had not yet decided that he ought to advance. 4. Since the column was overwhelmed by the enemy's cavalry, it halted. 5. He had to draw up the forces in an unfavorable place. 6. The highest ridge is to be climbed by this legion. 7. We must learn the name of the river which empties into the sea here. 8. You ought to await the reward which you have deserved.

## BATTLE AND PARLEY

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvētiī nāvibus coniūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partis cōpiārum Helvētiōs trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen reliquam esse, tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs<sup>2</sup> subitō adortus

<sup>1</sup> Say it is to be determined by us.

<sup>2</sup> impeded, that is, at a disadvantage.

magnam partem eorum occidit; reliqui sese fugae mandaverunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus patrum nostrōrum memoriā<sup>1</sup> cōsulem populi Rōmāni interfēcerat et eius exercitum 5 pepulerat.

Hōc proeliō factō,<sup>2</sup> reliquās<sup>3</sup> cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū permōti, cum id quod ipsi vix diēbus xx<sup>4</sup> cōfēcissent illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, 10 lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, qui superiōre bellō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: “Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētīi ubi eōs cōstitueris<sup>5</sup>; sī autem nōbis bellum facere māvis, revocā 15 animum tuum ad memoriā et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Ūnum pāgum subitō adortus es, cum ii qui flūmen trānsierant suis<sup>6</sup> auxiliium ferre nōn possent; quam ob rem existimāre nōn debēs Rōmānōs Helvētiis virtūte praestāre. Nōs magis virtūte 20 quam insidiis contendimus. Is locus ubi cōstitērimus ex calamitate populi Rōmāni et caede exercitūs nōmen capiet.”

His Caesar ita respondit: “Eās rēs dē quibus dixistis memoriā teneō. Sine causā Helvētīi illō tempore istam iniūriam populō Rōmānō intulērunt. Recentis quoque iniūriās 25 memoriā teneō. Contrā voluntātem meam iter per prōvinciam temptāvistis, agrōs sociōrum populi Rōmāni vāstāvistis. Dī immortālēs tam diū secundās rēs concessērunt, quō gravi-

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of time.

<sup>2</sup> That is, *fought*.

<sup>3</sup> Put first for emphasis, but the translation of the clause must begin with *ut*.

<sup>4</sup> In reading Latin pronounce the Latin word for which a numeral sign is used.

<sup>5</sup> See section 155.

<sup>6</sup> *to their comrades*.

ōre suppliciō vōs adficerent. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si  
obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae polliceāmini vōs  
factūrōs intellegam, vōbiscum pācem faciam.” Divicō re-  
spondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare solēre. Hōc  
5 respōnsō datō discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar  
equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem  
ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coēgerat,  
praemittit, quī videant quās in partis hostēs iter faciant.  
10 Quī ācrius agmen secūtī iniquō locō cum equitātū Helvētiō-  
rum proelium committunt, et paucī occiduntur. Quō proeliō  
ēlātī Helvētīi, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem  
equitum pepulerant, fortius resistere et nostrōs adorīri coepē-  
runt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Ita diēs circiter xv  
15 iter fēcērunt ut hostium agmen ā nostrō quinque aut sex  
milia passuum abesset.



MEMORIAL OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL

## LESSON LXVIII

**432. Gerund.** — The gerund is the neuter singular of the gerundive used as a substantive in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases (sections 489, 490, 491, 492, 497, 498).

Notice that the gerund of *eō* has *u* before the ending, instead of *e*. This spelling is often found also in the gerundives and gerunds of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations : **potiundus**.

## 433.

## Vocabulary

- causā,<sup>1</sup> with gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*
- frūmentārius, -a, -um, *of grain*; rēs frūmentāria, *supply of grain.* [frūmentum].
- impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; impedimenta (pl.), *baggage.* [impediō].
- conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, *place.* [locus].
- cōsidō, cōsiderē, cōsēdī, cōsessum, *settle*; also *encamp. residence.*
- incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum, *urge on, rouse.* excitement.
- perterreō, perterrere, perterrui, perterritum, *frighten*; perterritus, *panic-stricken.* [per + terreō].
- renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātum, *report.* [nūntiō].
- militāris, militāre, *military*; rēs militāris, *art of war.* [miles].
- novissimus, -a, -um,<sup>2</sup> *last*; novissimum agmen, *rear.*
- scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.* omniscient.

## Exercises

434. 1. Nulla est spēs superandī. 2. Nulla est spēs rēgis superandī (*see 435*). 3. Renūntiātum est Gallōs spē oppidī potiundī adductōs prope cōsēdisse. 4. Dēspērāntēs dē oppidō expugnandō ad pugnandum incitārī nōn poterant. 5. Repentinus impetus factus erat hostium perterrendōrum causā. 6. Summum iugum ad aciem instruendam est idōneum. 7. Equīs incitātis collem celeriter ascendunt. 8. Equitēs nōbīs conlocandī sunt citrā flūmen quod in Rhodanum influit, nē hostibus sit potestās trānseundi. 9. Neque nostrī in locum inīquiōrem pugnandī causā prōgressūrī sunt. 10. Legiōnēs hīc cōsistent, equitēs rei frūmentāriae causā praemittentur. 11. Hic pāgus finem fugiendī nōndum fēcerat. 12. In imperātore dēligendō scientia rei militāris maximē est postulanda. 13. Mē ā dicendō vix continere

<sup>1</sup> This is the ablative of the noun. It regularly follows the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> This is the superlative of novus, *new*.

possum. 14. *Legiōnēs duae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis erant.*

**435. Use of Gerund and Gerundive.**— In sentence 1 *superandī* is the genitive of the gerund (*of conquering*); but in sentence 2 it is the genitive singular masculine of the gerundive, agreeing with *rēgis* (*of conquering the king*). Notice that the gerund has the construction of a noun, the gerundive that of an adjective. When the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive is commonly used instead: so *rēgis superandī* instead of *rēgem superandī*. It is important that this use of the gerundive be carefully studied with reference to the following points:—

1. The gerundive agrees with a noun.
2. The noun is in the case in which the gerund would be, if it were used.
3. The gerundive is translated as the gerund would be, and the noun is translated as its direct object.
4. The translation is active, not passive.
5. The gerundive does not express the idea of necessity or propriety, as in the periphrastic conjugation.

**436.** 1. He sends the cavalry forward for the purpose of procuring a supply of grain. 2. Two legions had been placed in the rear for the purpose of defending the baggage. 3. In reporting the recent engagement he has spoken about Caesar's remarkable knowledge of the art of war. 4. We shall treat with him about settling on this side of the river. 5. The panic-stricken slave tried to escape by urging on his horse. 6. I had decided that I ought not to give rewards which no one deserved. 7. You urged them on to resisting. 8. I am about to make an end of speaking.

## LESSON LXIX

**437. Supine.** — The supine of a verb has two forms of the fourth declension, the accusative and the ablative. The accusative is spelled the same as the form of the perfect participle which is given as one of the principal parts of the verb (sections 489, 490, 491, 492, 497, 498).

**438. Vocabulary**

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *dense, in close order.* scūtum, -ī, n., *shield. scutcheon.*  
tergum, -ī, n., *back.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light. lucid.*

postridiē, adv., *the next day.* [posterus + diēs].

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, *bring together; sē cōnferre, betake oneself, go.* [ferō].

laccessō, laccessere, laccessivī, laccessitum, *harass.*

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum, *change. immutable.*

sciō, scīre, scivī, scitum, *know.* [scientia].

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn; terga vertere, flee.* [revertor].

**Exercises**

**439.** 1. Nostrī iugum oppugnandī oppidī causā ascendērunt.  
2. Lēgātī veniunt pācem petītum (*see 440*). 3. Statuerat sibi aciem instruendam esse, quae novissimum agmen adorirētur. 4. Hoc est optimum factū (*see 441*). 5. Timōre<sup>1</sup> perterritī terga vertērunt. 6. Nūntius victōriam nūntiātum missus est. 7. Primā lūce<sup>2</sup> impedimentis in ūnum locum conlātis prōgressī sunt, ut castra oppugnārent. 8. Cōnfertissimā aciē scūta Gallis magnō erant impedimentō. 9. Quaesītum dē rē frūmentāriā ibimus. 10. Helvētīū itinere mūtātō agmen nostrum laccessere coepērunt. 11. Ille vir timōre

<sup>1</sup> This word need not be translated.

<sup>2</sup> That is, *at daybreak.*

perterritus id quod nōn viderat prō visō<sup>1</sup> Caesari renūntiāvit.  
 12. Postridiē tē sciente in urbem ad patrem meum dēfendendum vēni. 13. Difficile dictū est quid existiment.

**440. Use of Supine in *um*.** — In sentence 2 *petitum* is the supine. It expresses purpose, and is to be translated *to seek*. The supine in *um* is used to express purpose with verbs of motion only.

**441. Use of Supine in *ū*.** — In sentence 4 *optimum factū* is to be translated *the best thing to do*. Only a few supines in *ū* are in use, and they are used chiefly with certain adjectives. Note those that you find, and the adjective with which each goes.

**442. Review of Expressions of Purpose.** — Purpose may be expressed in Latin in these various ways: —

1. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.
2. The subjunctive with a relative (*quō* when the clause contains a comparative).
3. The accusative of the gerundive or gerund with *ad*.
4. The genitive of the gerundive or gerund with *causā*.
5. The supine in *um*.

Find in the sentences above examples of these five ways of expressing purpose, and rewrite sentence 2 in the first four ways.

**443.** 1. The horsemen fled, that they might avoid the danger. 2. They urged on their horses, that they might come to the bridge more quickly. 3. The next day we selected a hill on which to encamp. 4. At the foot of<sup>2</sup> the hill he will place his cavalry to harass the enemy's rear. 5. Weapons and military standards are brought together at daybreak. 6. We were in close order and prepared for<sup>3</sup> advancing. 7. He comes to see. 8. Do you ask who deserves this reward? 9. It is difficult to say. 10. I know that I cannot change my nature by increasing my knowledge.

<sup>1</sup> for seen, that is, as seen.

<sup>2</sup> at the foot of, sub.

<sup>3</sup> ad.

## LESSON LXX

## 444.

## Vocabulary

gladius, -ī, m., *sword*. gladiator.      prope, prep.<sup>2</sup> with acc., *near*.  
 intervāllum, -ī, n., *interval*.      ut, conj., *as*.<sup>3</sup>  
 post, prep. with acc., *behind*.<sup>1</sup>

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum, *turn aside*. [ā + vertō].  
 convertō, convertere, convertī, conversum, *turn about, reverse*. [vertō].  
 cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum, *become accustomed; perfect, have become accustomed, that is, be accustomed*.  
 nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitum, *not know*. [sciō].  
 praecipio, praecipere, praecipī, praeceptum, with dat., *give directions, instruct*. [capiō].

## Exercises

445. 1. Si domī est, gaudēmus. 2. Caesar ei praecēperat nē hostium novissimum agmen lacesseret.<sup>4</sup> 3. Si hostis sequēbar, idem intervāllum semper cōnservābam. 4. Si hostīs accēdere renūntiātum erat, impedimenta post legiōnēs conlocāre cōnsuēverat. 5. Si Caesar iter āverterit,<sup>5</sup> Helvētīi Rōmānōs perterritōs fugere existimābunt. 6. Postridiē pugnandī causā itinere conversō nostrōs sequī coepērunt. 7. Si sententiam saepe mūtābis, nesciam quid velis. 8. Nisi gladiis ūtēminī, eōs nōn vincētis. 9. Multō diē<sup>6</sup> prope montem cōnsēdērunt. 10. Hoc tempus in rē frūmentāriā comparandā et in cōferendis scūtis signisque militāribus cōnsūmpsisit. 11. In mediō colle,<sup>7</sup> ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, hostēs cōnfertissimam aciem instrūxerant.

<sup>1</sup> How is this preposition translated in expressions of time?

<sup>2</sup> Remember that this word may be used as an adverb also.

<sup>3</sup> When ut means *as*, the verb used with it is in the indicative.

<sup>4</sup> See section 268.

<sup>5</sup> See section 155.

<sup>6</sup> *late in the day*.

<sup>7</sup> That is, *half-way up the hill*. See page 105, foot-note 1.

**446. Conditional Complexes.**—Sentence 3 is a conditional complex, or a complex sentence made up of a condition and a conclusion. The clause *sī hostīs sequēbar* is the condition, and the clause *idem intervāllum semper cōservābam* the conclusion. In sentence 8 *nisi gladiis utēmini* is the condition. Notice that the conditions are introduced by *sī* and *nisi*. Find all the other conditional complexes above, and notice that present, past, or future action is represented in both clauses by the usual tense of the indicative.

**447.** 1. They had come to attack the camp before light. 2. I do not know what is being done behind my back. 3. Unless assistance comes, I shall instruct them to turn their horses about<sup>1</sup> and flee. 4. We were prepared, as you know, to fight with swords, if this seemed the best thing to do. 5. If they try to settle near your boundaries, you will rouse the state to arms and turn them aside. 6. He is accustomed to leave an interval between the legions. 7. You ought to turn labor into knowledge, if you can.

## THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS

Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius<sup>2</sup> castris octō, quae esset nātūra montis quī<sup>3</sup> cognōscerent mīsīt. Renūntiātum est aditum esse facilem. Tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus<sup>4</sup> quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sibi sit in animō dēmōnstrat. Ipse quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī summam scientiam rei militāris

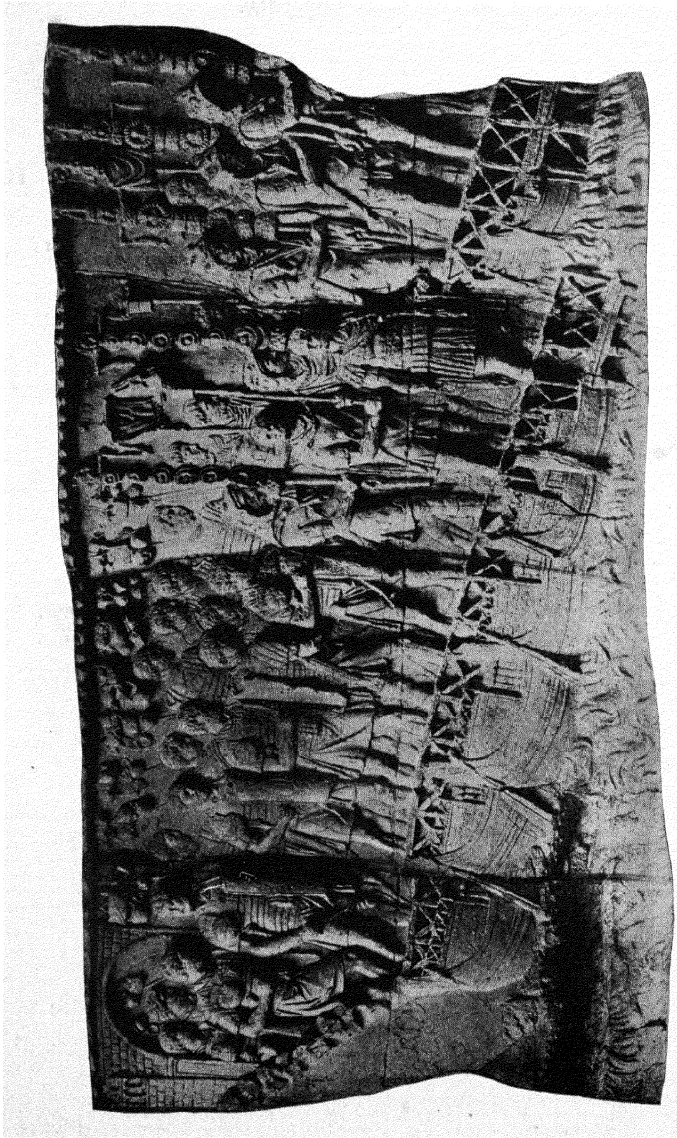
<sup>1</sup> Use the ablative absolute, omitting *and*. Compare page 139, line 4.

<sup>2</sup> *his own*.

<sup>3</sup> The antecedent (*men*), which would be the object of *mīsīt*, is omitted.

<sup>4</sup> *as guides*.





ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

habēre dicēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

Primā luce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis repperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō incitātō ad eum venit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in<sup>1</sup> proximum collem dūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum<sup>2</sup> ā Caesare nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique unō tempore in hostis impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat suōsque ā proeliō continēbat. Tandem multō diē per exploratōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum id quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē intervallō quod cōnsueverat relictō hostis sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Postridiē, quod rem frumentāriam comparandam esse existimāvit, iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimābant, quod superioribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine sequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

Postquam id vidit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem instrūxit legionum quattuor veterum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Italiā nūper

<sup>1</sup> *up on.*

<sup>2</sup> *directions had been given to him, that is, he had been instructed.*

comparāverat conlocārī iussit. Helvētīi secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē repulsō nostrō equitatū in primam nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt.

## LESSON LXXI

### 448. Vocabulary

**apertus**, -a, -um, *open, unprotected*. **trīduum**, -ī, n., *three days*. [trēs + aperiō].  
+ diēs].

**latus**, lateris, n., *side, flank. lateral*.

**cohortor**, cohortārī, cohortātus sum, *encourage, urge. exhortation*.

**cōnspicor**, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus sum, *catch sight of, see*. [cōnspectus].

**iaciō**, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw. interjection*.

**prōiciō**, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectum, *throw down, fling away*. [prō + iaciō].

**intermittō**, intermittere, intermisī, intermissum, *interrupt*; also (in the passive) *intervene*. [inter + mittō].

**referō**, referre, rettullī, relātum, *bring back*; **pedem referre**, *fall back, retreat*. [ferō].

**removeō**, removēre, remōvī, remōtum, *move back, remove*. [moveō].

### Exercises

**449.** 1. Si arma conlata in fossam iaciētis, vōs in dēditionem accipiet. 2. Si arma in fossam iēcēritis, vōs in dēditionem accipiet. 3. Si arma in fossam iaciātis (*see 450*), vōs in dēditionem accipiat. 4. Si arma in fossam iēcēritis, vōs in dēditionem accipiat. 5. Trīduō intermissō primā luce prope flūmen castra posuistī. 6. Si cōnfertissimā aciē scūta nōbīs sint impedimētō, ea prōiciāmus. 7. Postridiē Caesar praecēpit ut primum suus, deinde omnium equī ex cōnspectū removērentur. 8. Si Gallī nostrōs perturbātōs cōnspicātī proelium renovent, multī interficiantur. 9. Cohortātus suōs aciē conversā impetum gladiīs fierī iussit. 10. Si hostīs

ā latere apertō<sup>1</sup> lacessiverimus, pedem referant. II. Sī tē ab hōc cōnsiliō āvertere possit, nōn solum tibi sed etiam sibi prōsit.

**450. Future Conditional Complexes.** — In sentence 3 sī iaciātis, accipiat is to be translated *if you should throw, he would receive*. Notice that the present subjunctive is used in both the condition and the conclusion to represent a future action. In sentence 4 iēceritis is the perfect subjunctive (*should have thrown*), but it is best translated in the same way as iaciātis (*should throw*). You have seen that the future and future perfect indicative are also used in conditional complexes. The present and perfect subjunctive are less vivid. The perfect subjunctive, like the future perfect indicative, represents the action as completed in future time. Notice that more vivid future conditional complexes in English have *shall* or *will* in the conclusion, less vivid *should* or *would*.

**451.** 1. If you should change your opinion again, as you are accustomed to do, I should not know what you wish. 2. Unless the horses are removed, we shall be able to escape. 3. If the enemy should attack you on<sup>2</sup> the unprotected flank, I should urge you not to retreat.<sup>3</sup> 4. When they caught sight of us, they flung away<sup>4</sup> their weapons and fled, as you know. 5. If the same interval is kept, we shall arrive in three days. 6. If he should draw up his forces in an open place, the march would be interrupted. 7. If he should throw himself from this high building, he would be killed instantly.

---

<sup>1</sup> This was the right flank, which was not protected by the shields of the soldiers.

<sup>2</sup> ab.

<sup>3</sup> See section 268.

<sup>4</sup> Use the ablative absolute.

## LESSON LXXII

## 452.

## Vocabulary

alter . . . alter, <i>one . . . the other</i> ;	hōra, -ae, f., <i>hour</i> .
alterī . . . alterī, <i>one party . . . the other party</i> .	inopia, -ae, f., <i>want, lack</i> . [ops].
commodē, adv., <i>conveniently, effectively</i> . [incommodum].	sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, <i>left</i> ; as noun, sinistra, -ae, f., <i>left hand</i> . sinister.
dexter, dextra, dextrum, <i>right</i> ; as noun, dextra, -ae, f., <i>right hand</i> . <i>dexterity</i> .	unde, adv., <i>whence</i> . [undique]. vāllum, -ī, n., <i>rampart, wall</i> .

coniciō, conicere, conicēci, coniectum, *hurl*. [iaciō].

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, *go out, march out*. [prōgredior].

redūcō, reducere, redūxi, reductum, *lead back, bring back*. [dūcō].

restituō, restituere, restitui, restitutum, *restore*. [statuō].

vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum, *be vacant*.

## Exercises

453. 1. Sinistrā scūtum, dextrā gladium teneō. 2. Si dux abest, mūnere suō, ut cōnsuēverunt, commodē funguntur. 3. Nisi dux abesset, mūnere suō fungerentur (*see 454*). 4. Si hostis vidērent, ex vāllō tēla conicerent. 5. Si inopia tēlōrum fuit, oppugnātiōnem nōn sustinuērunt. 6. Nisi inopia tēlōrum fuisset, oppugnātiōnem complūris hōrās sustinuissent (*see 454*). 7. Si tēla ā nōbīs iaci posent, nōn nōs converterēmus. 8. Alterī in eum locum unde erant ēgressī reducēbantur, alterī prōgrediēbantur. 9. Nisi Helvētīi, ut Caesar praecēperat, oppida sua restituissent, Germāni agrōs vacantis occupāvissent. 10. Caesar, si sē ad pedēs eius prōiēcissent pācemque petivissent, concessisset. 11. Hōc tōtō proeliō āversum hostem<sup>1</sup> vidēre nēmō potuit. 12. Longō intervāllō intermissō Rōmam vēnī.

<sup>1</sup> That is. *the back of an enemy*.

**454. Present and Past Conditional Complexes.** — Sentence 3 is to be translated *if the leader were not absent, they would perform their duty*; and you are to understand that the leader is absent and they are not performing their duty. So in sentence 6 (*if there had not been a lack, they would have sustained*) you are to understand that there was a lack and they did not sustain. These conditional complexes, therefore, are contrary to fact. Notice that the past subjunctive is used in both the condition and the conclusion to imply the non-occurrence of an action in present time, the past perfect subjunctive to imply the non-occurrence of an action in past time. You have seen that the indicative is used in present and past conditional complexes which imply neither the occurrence nor the non-occurrence of the action. These are called neutral.

**455. Summary of Conditional Complexes**

LATIN	ENGLISH
PRESENT AND PAST NEUTRAL	
Present, past, perfect, or past perfect indicative.	Present, past, perfect, or past perfect indicative.
MORE VIVID FUTURE	
Future or future perfect indicative.	Present indicative in condition. <i>Shall</i> or <i>will</i> in conclusion.
LESS VIVID FUTURE	
Present or perfect subjunctive.	<i>Should</i> in condition. <i>Should</i> or <i>would</i> in conclusion.
PRESENT CONTRARY TO FACT	
Past subjunctive.	<i>Were</i> or past in condition. <i>Should</i> or <i>would</i> in conclusion.
PAST CONTRARY TO FACT	
Past perfect subjunctive.	<i>Had</i> in condition. <i>Should have</i> or <i>would have</i> in conclusion.

456. 1. If that place were vacant, you would be able to seize it. 2. In two hours they would have gone out, if the scouts had not caught sight of the enemy near the camp. 3. If the attack had been made from this side, the javelins would have been hurled from the rampart less effectively. 4. If the road were open, I should remove the garrison on account of the want of grain. 5. If I did not know, I should think that they had retreated. 6. If you had not restored your towns, I should have made war upon you again. 7. He urged that they should be led back to the general. 8. One legion was on the right wing, the other on the left.

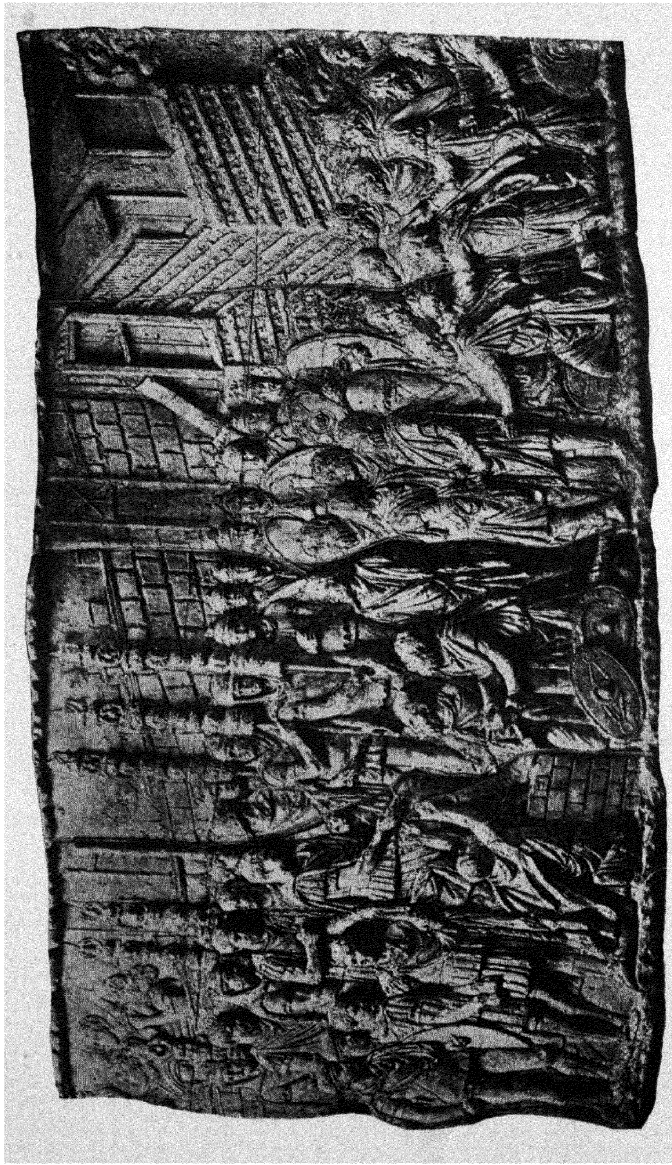
### THE DEFEAT AND SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS

Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium aciem reppulērunt. Eā perturbātā gladiīs in eōs impetum  
 5 fēcērunt. Cōnfertissimā aciē scūta Gallis magnō erant impedimentō. Sinistrā enim impeditā commodē pugnāre nōn poterant. Multī etiam māluērunt scūtum prōicere et apertō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus cōfectī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere  
 10 coepērunt. Occupātō monte et accēdentibus nostrīs Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant<sup>1</sup> et novissimis praesidiō erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō cōnāti sunt circumvenire, et id cōspicātī Helvētīi, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus resistere et proelium renovāre  
 15 coepērunt. Caesaris prīma et secunda aciēs victīs restitit; tertia sē convertit, ut impetum venientium sustinēret.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is *brought up the rear*.





SURRENDER OF BARBARIANS TO ROMAN GENERAL

Ita diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.<sup>1</sup> Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta sua sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad noctem pugnārētur, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam 5 noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō impedimentis ūtēbantur et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientis tēla coniciēbant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ii quī ex eō proeliō effūgerant eā tōtā nocte iērunt nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō; in finis Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum propter vulnera militum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit. 15

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eī in itinere occurrissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent pācemque petivissent, eōs suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Dum ea cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā 20 circiter hominum milia sex, aut arbitrātī<sup>2</sup> Caesarem armis trāditis sē suppliciō adfectūrum esse aut spē salutis adducti, primā nocte<sup>3</sup> ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finisque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Hōs reductōs Caesar in hostium numerō habuit<sup>4</sup>; reliquōs 25 omnis obsidibus armisque trāditis in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finis suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti atque oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

<sup>1</sup> This is the impersonal use of the passive (*it was fought*). It may be translated *they fought* or *the battle raged*.

<sup>2</sup> This is masculine in accordance with the sense, though it agrees with *milia* in case.

<sup>3</sup> That is *at nightfall*.

<sup>4</sup> That is *treated as enemies*. He probably put them to death.

## CONSPECTUS OF INFLECTIONS

## 457. First Declension : Nouns

*sagitta, f., arrow*

## SINGULAR

		ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE :	<i>sagitta, an arrow, the arrow.</i>	<b>a</b>
GENITIVE :	<i>sagittae, of an arrow, the arrow.</i>	<b>ae</b>
DATIVE :	<i>sagittae, to or for an arrow, the arrow.</i>	<b>ae</b>
ACCUSATIVE :	<i>sagittam, an arrow, the arrow.</i>	<b>am</b>
ABLATIVE :	<i>sagittā, by or with an arrow, the arrow.</i>	<b>ā</b>

## PLURAL

NOMINATIVE :	<i>sagittae, arrows, the arrows.</i>	<b>ae</b>
GENITIVE :	<i>sagittārum, of arrows, the arrows.</i>	<b>ārum</b>
DATIVE :	<i>sagittīs, to or for arrows, the arrows.</i>	<b>īs</b>
ACCUSATIVE :	<i>sagittās, arrows, the arrows.</i>	<b>ās</b>
ABLATIVE :	<i>sagittīs, by or with arrows, the arrows.</i>	<b>īs</b>

## 458. Second Declension : Nouns

*mūrus, m.  
wall**bellum, n.  
war*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE ENDINGS		NEUTER ENDINGS	
NOM.	<i>mūrus</i>	<b>us</b>	<i>bellum</i>	<b>um</b>
GEN.	<i>mūrī</i>	<b>ī</b>	<i>bellī</i>	<b>ī</b>
DAT.	<i>mūrō</i>	<b>ō</b>	<i>bellō</i>	<b>ō</b>
ACC.	<i>mūrum</i>	<b>um</b>	<i>bellum</i>	<b>um</b>
ABL.	<i>mūrō</i>	<b>ō</b>	<i>bellō</i>	<b>ō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>mūrī</i>	<b>ī</b>	<i>bella</i>	<b>a</b>
GEN.	<i>mūrōrum</i>	<b>ōrum</b>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<b>ōrum</b>
DAT.	<i>mūrīs</i>	<b>īs</b>	<i>bellīs</i>	<b>īs</b>
ACC.	<i>mūrōs</i>	<b>ōs</b>	<i>bella</i>	<b>a</b>
ABL.	<i>mūrīs</i>	<b>īs</b>	<i>bellīs</i>	<b>īs</b>

**filius, m.**  
*son*

**cōnsilium, n.**  
*plan*

## SINGULAR

NOM.	<b>filius</b>	<b>cōnsilium</b>
GEN.	<b>fili</b>	<b>cōnsili</b>
DAT.	<b>filiō</b>	<b>cōnsiliō</b>
ACC.	<b>filium</b>	<b>cōnsilium</b>
ABL.	<b>filiō</b>	<b>cōnsiliō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<b>fili</b>	<b>cōnsilia</b>
GEN.	<b>filiōrum</b>	<b>cōnsiliōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>filiis</b>	<b>cōnsiliis</b>
ACC.	<b>filiōs</b>	<b>cōnsilia</b>
ABL.	<b>filiis</b>	<b>cōnsiliis</b>

**puer, m.**  
*boy*

**ager, m.**  
*field*

**vir, m.**  
*man*

## SINGULAR

NOM.	<b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	<b>vir</b>
GEN.	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	<b>virī</b>
DAT.	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>
ACC.	<b>puerum</b>	<b>agrū</b>	<b>virum</b>
ABL.	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	<b>virī</b>
GEN.	<b>puerōrum</b>	<b>agrōrum</b>	<b>virōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>
ACC.	<b>puerōs</b>	<b>agrōs</b>	<b>virōs</b>
ABL.	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>

459. Third Declension : Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*

	<b>hiems, f.</b> <i>winter</i>	<b>cōnsul, m.</b> <i>consul</i>	<b>arbor, f.</b> <i>tree</i>	
	SINGULAR			
				M. AND F. ENDINGS
NOM.	hiems	cōnsul	arbor	s or none
GEN.	hiemis	cōsulis	arboris	is
DAT.	hiemī	cōsulī	arborī	ī
ACC.	hiemem	cōsulem	arborem	em
ABL.	hieme	cōsule	arbore	e
	PLURAL			
NOM.	hiemēs	cōsulēs	arborēs	ēs
GEN.	hiemum	cōsulum	arborum	um
DAT.	hiemibus	cōsulibus	arboribus	ibus
ACC.	hiemēs	cōsulēs	arborēs	ēs
ABL.	hiemibus	cōsulibus	arboribus	ibus
	<b>dux, m.</b> <i>leader</i>	<b>rēx, m.</b> <i>king</i>	<b>palūs, f.</b> <i>swamp</i>	<b>virtūs, f.</b> <i>bravery</i>
	SINGULAR			
NOM.	dux	rēx	palūs	virtūs
GEN.	ducis	rēgis	palūdis	virtūtis
DAT.	duci	rēgī	palūdī	virtūtī
ACC.	ducem	rēgem	palūdem	virtūtem
ABL.	duce	rēge	palūde	virtūte
	PLURAL			
NOM.	ducēs	rēgēs	palūdēs	virtūtēs
GEN.	ducum	rēgum	palūdum	virtūtum
DAT.	ducibus	rēgibus	palūdibus	virtūtibus
ACC.	ducēs	rēgēs	palūdēs	virtūtēs
ABL.	ducibus	rēgibus	palūdibus	virtūtibus

<b>centuriō</b> , m. <i>centurion</i>	<b>homō</b> , m. and f. <i>man</i>	<b>mīles</b> , m. <i>soldier</i>	<b>pater</b> , m. <i>father</i>
------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

## SINGULAR

NOM.	centuriō	homō	mīles	pater
GEN.	centuriōnis	hominis	militis	patris
DAT.	centuriōni	hominī	militī	patrī
ACC.	centuriōnem	hominem	militem	patrem
ABL.	centuriōne	homine	militē	patre

## PLURAL

NOM.	centuriōnes	hominēs	militēs	patrēs
GEN.	centuriōnum	hominum	militum	patrum
DAT.	centuriōnibus	hominibus	militibus	patribus
ACC.	centuriōnes	hominēs	militēs	patrēs
ABL.	centuriōnibus	hominibus	militibus	patribus

**nōmen**, n.  
*name*

**genus**, n.  
*race*

## SINGULAR

NOM.	nōmen	genus	NEUTER ENDINGS <i>none</i>
GEN.	nōminis	generis	<i>is</i>
DAT.	nōminī	generī	<i>i</i>
ACC.	nōmen	genus	<i>none</i>
ABL.	nōmine	genere	<i>e</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	nōmina	genera	<i>a</i>
GEN.	nōminum	generum	<i>um</i>
DAT.	nōminibus	generibus	<i>ibus</i>
ACC.	nōmina	genera	<i>a</i>
ABL.	nōminibus	generibus	<i>ibus</i>

460. Third Declension: Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*

<b>hostis, m.</b>	<b>urbs, f.</b>
<i>enemy</i>	<i>city</i>

## SINGULAR

			M. AND F. ENDINGS
NOM.	hostis	urbs	is or s
GEN.	hostis	urbis	is
DAT.	hosti	urbi	i
ACC.	hostem	urbem	em
ABL.	hoste	urbe	e

## PLURAL

NOM.	hostēs	urbēs	ēs
GEN.	hostium	urbium	ium
DAT.	hostibus	urbibus	ibus
ACC.	hostis or hostēs	urbis or urbēs	is or ēs
ABL.	hostibus	urbibus	ibus

<b>insigne, n.</b>	<b>animal, n.</b>	<b>calcar, n.</b>
<i>decoration</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>spur</i>

## SINGULAR

			NEUTER ENDINGS
NOM.	insigne	animal	e or none
GEN.	insignis	animālis	is
DAT.	insigni	animālī	i
ACC.	insigne	animal	e or none
ABL.	insigni	animālī	i

## PLURAL

NOM.	insignia	animālia	calcāria	ia
GEN.	insignium	animālium	calcārium	ium
DAT.	insignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus
ACC.	insignia	animālia	calcāria	ia
ABL.	insignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus

## 461. Fourth Declension: Nouns

**exercitus, m.**  
*army*

**cornū, n.**  
*horn*

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE ENDINGS		NEUTER ENDINGS	
NOM.	exercitus	us	cornū	ū
GEN.	exercitūs	ūs	cornūs	ūs
DAT.	exercituī	uī	cornū	ū
ACC.	exercitum	um	cornū	ū
ABL.	exercitū	ū	cornū	ū

## PLURAL

NOM.	exercitūs	ūs	cornua	ua
GEN.	exercituum	uum	cornuum	uum
DAT.	exercitibus	ibus	cornibus	ibus
ACC.	exercitūs	ūs	cornua	ua
ABL.	exercitibus	ibus	cornibus	ibus

## 462. Fifth Declension: Nouns

**diēs, m.**  
*day*

**rēs, f.**  
*thing*

## SINGULAR

			ENDINGS
NOM.	diēs	rēs	ēs
GEN.	diēī	reī	ēī or eī
DAT.	diēī	reī	ēī or eī
ACC.	diem	rem	em
ABL.	diē	rē	ē

## PLURAL

NOM.	diēs	rēs	ēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum	ērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
ACC.	diēs	rēs	ēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

## 463.

## Irregular Nouns

**deus, m.**  
*god*

**domus, f.**  
*home*

**vīs, f.**  
*force*

## SINGULAR

NOM. **deus**  
GEN. **dei**  
DAT. **deō**  
ACC. **deum**  
ABL. **deō**

**domus**  
**domūs**  
**domui**  
**domum**  
**domō**

**vīs**  
**vīs**  
**vī**  
**vim**  
**vī**

## PLURAL

NOM. **dī**  
GEN. **deōrum or deum**  
DAT. **dīs**  
ACC. **deōs**  
ABL. **dīs**

**domūs**  
**domōrum**  
**domibus**  
**domōs or domūs**  
**domibus**

**vīrēs**  
**vīrium**  
**vīribus**  
**vīrīs or vīrēs**  
**vīribus**

## 464. First and Second Declensions: Adjectives

**bonus, good**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
GEN.	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>boni</b>
DAT.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
ACC.	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
ABL.	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<b>boni</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
GEN.	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
DAT.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
ACC.	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
ABL.	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

*liber, free**integer, fresh*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum	integer	integra	integrum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī	integrī	integrae	integrī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō	integrō	integrae	integrō
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberum	integrum	integram	integrum
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberō	integrō	integrā	integrō

## PLURAL

NOM.	liberī	liberae	libera	integrī	integrae	integra
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum	integrōrum	integrārum	integrōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	integrīs	integrīs	integrīs
ACC.	liberōs	liberās	libera	integrōs	integrās	integra
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	integrīs	integrīs	integrīs

## 465. Declension of Pronominal Adjectives

*ūnus, one**alius, other*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alius	alia	aliud
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	alfus	alfus	alfus
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	aliī	aliī	aliī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alium	aliam	aliud
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	aliō	aliā	aliō

*alter, the other**uter, which?*

NOM.	alter	altera	alterum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	alterius	alterius	alterius	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
DAT.	alterī	alterī	alterī	utrī	utrī	utrī
ACC.	alterum	alteram	alterum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	alterō	alterā	alterō	utrō	utrā	utrō

**466. Third Declension: Adjectives of Three Endings***ācer, sharp*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

## PLURAL

NOM.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
GEN.	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrīs or ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrīs or ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

**467. Third Declension: Adjectives of Two Endings***omnis, all*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
GEN.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
DAT.	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
ACC.	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnīs or omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
ABL.	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

**468. Third Declension: Adjectives of One Ending***ingēns, enormous*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>ingentēs</i>	<i>ingentia</i>
GEN.	<i>ingentis</i>	<i>ingentis</i>	<i>ingentium</i>	<i>ingentium</i>
DAT.	<i>ingentī</i>	<i>ingentī</i>	<i>ingentibus</i>	<i>ingentibus</i>
ACC.	<i>ingentem</i>	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>ingentīs or ingentēs</i>	<i>ingentia</i>
ABL.	<i>ingentī</i>	<i>ingentī</i>	<i>ingentibur</i>	<i>ingentibus</i>

## 469. Third Declension: Irregular Adjective of One Ending

*vetus, old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
GEN.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
DAT.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
ACC.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
ABL.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

## 470. Third Declension: Present Participles

*amāns, loving*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantis or amantēs	amantia
ABL.	amante	amante	amantibus	amantibus

## 471. Third Declension: Comparatives

*longior, longer*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
GEN.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
DAT.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
ACC.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
ABL.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

## 472. Third Declension: Irregular Comparative

plūs, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	<i>none</i>	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	<i>none</i>	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	<i>none</i>	<i>none</i>	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	<i>none</i>	plūs	plūrīs or plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	<i>none</i>	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## 473. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus, <i>long</i> .	longior, <i>longer</i> .	longissimus, <i>longest</i> .
nōbilis, <i>noble</i> .	nōbilior, <i>nobler</i> .	nōbilissimus, <i>noblest</i> .
audāx, <i>bold</i> .	audāctor, <i>bolder</i> .	audācissimus, <i>boldest</i> .
potēns, <i>powerful</i> .	potentior, <i>more powerful</i> .	potentissimus, <i>most powerful</i> .

474. Comparison of Adjectives in *er*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
liber, <i>free</i> .	liberior.	liberrimus.
crēber, <i>frequent</i> .	crēbrior.	crēberrimus.
ācer, <i>sharp</i> .	āctor.	ācerimus.

475. Comparison of Certain Adjectives in *ilis*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like</i> .	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
humilis, <i>low</i> .	humilior.	humillimus.

## 476. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i> .	melior, <i>better</i> .	optimus, <i>best</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> .	pēior, <i>worse</i> .	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
magnus, <i>great</i> .	māior, <i>greater</i> .	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>little</i> .	minor, <i>less</i> .	minimus, <i>least</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	plūs, <i>more</i> .	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
senex, <i>old</i> .	senior or māior nātū, <i>older</i> .	maximus nātū, <i>oldest</i> .
iuvenis, <i>young</i> .	iūnior or minor nātū, <i>younger</i> .	minimus nātū, <i>youngest</i> .

## 477. Regular Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē, <i>widely</i> .	lātius, <i>more widely</i> .	lātissimē, <i>most widely</i> .
liberē, <i>freely</i> .	liberius, <i>more freely</i> .	liberrimē, <i>most freely</i> .
ācritēr, <i>sharply</i> .	ācrius, <i>more sharply</i> .	ācerrimē, <i>most sharply</i> .
fortitēr, <i>bravely</i> .	fortius, <i>more bravely</i> .	fortissimē, <i>most bravely</i> .

## 478. Irregular Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
benē, <i>well</i> .	melius, <i>better</i> .	optimē, <i>best</i> .
malē, <i>badly</i> .	pēius, <i>worse</i> .	pessimē, <i>worst</i> .
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs, <i>more</i> .	plūrimum, <i>most</i> .
diū, <i>long</i> .	diūtius, <i>longer</i> .	diūtissimē, <i>longest</i> .

## 479. Numerals

SIGN	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
I	ūnus, <i>one</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
II	duo, <i>two</i> .	secundus, <i>second</i> .
III	trēs, <i>three</i> .	tertius, <i>third</i> .
IIII or IV	quattuor, <i>four</i> .	quārtus, <i>fourth</i> .
V	quīnque, <i>five</i> .	quīntus, <i>fifth</i> .
VI	sex	sextus
VII	septem	septimus
VIII	octō	octāvus
VIIII or IX	novem	nōnus
X	decem	decimus
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus

XIII <i>or</i> XIV	quattuor <b>decim</b>	quārtus <b>decimus</b>
XV	quīn <b>decim</b>	quīntus <b>decimus</b>
XVI	sē <b>decim</b>	sextus <b>decimus</b>
XVII	septē <b>decim</b>	septimus <b>decimus</b>
XVIII	duodē <b>vīgintī</b>	duodē <b>vīcēnsimus</b>
XVIII <i>or</i> XIX	ūndē <b>vīgintī</b>	ūndē <b>vīcēnsimus</b>
XX	<b>vīgintī</b>	<b>vīcēnsimus</b>
XXI	<b>vīgintī</b> ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et <b>vīgintī</b>	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> p̄rimus
XXII	<b>vīgintī</b> duo <i>or</i> duo et <b>vīgintī</b>	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> secundus
XXIII	<b>vīgintī</b> trēs	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> tertius
XXIII <i>or</i> XXIV	<b>vīgintī</b> quattuor	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> quārtus
XXV	<b>vīgintī</b> quīnque	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> quīntus
XXVI	<b>vīgintī</b> sex	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> sextus
XXVII	<b>vīgintī</b> septem	<b>vīcēnsimus</b> septimus
XXVIII	duodē <b>trīgintā</b>	duodē <b>trīcēnsimus</b>
XXVIII <i>or</i> XXIX	ūndē <b>trīgintā</b>	ūndē <b>trīcēnsimus</b>
XXX	<b>trīgintā</b>	<b>trīcēnsimus</b>
XXX <i>or</i> XL	quadrā <b>gintā</b>	quadrā <b>gēnsimus</b>
L	quīnquā <b>gintā</b>	quīnquā <b>gēnsimus</b>
LX	sexā <b>gintā</b>	sexā <b>gēnsimus</b>
LXX	septuā <b>gintā</b>	septuā <b>gēnsimus</b>
LXXX	octō <b>gintā</b>	octō <b>gēnsimus</b>
LXXX <i>or</i> XC	nōnā <b>gintā</b>	nōnā <b>gēnsimus</b>
C	centum	cent <b>ēnsimus</b>
CI	centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	cent <b>ēnsimus</b> p̄rimus
CXXI	centum <b>vīgintī</b> ūnus	cent <b>ēnsimus</b> <b>vīcēnsimus</b> p̄rimus
CC	ducentī	ducent <b>ēnsimus</b>
CCC	trecentī	trecent <b>ēnsimus</b>
CCCC	quadringentī	quadringent <b>ēnsimus</b>
D	quīngentī	quīngent <b>ēnsimus</b>
DC	sescentī	sescent <b>ēnsimus</b>
DCC	septingentī	septingent <b>ēnsimus</b>
DCCC	octingentī	octingent <b>ēnsimus</b>
DCCCC	nōngentī	nōngent <b>ēnsimus</b>
M	mille	mill <b>ēnsimus</b>

## 480. Declension of Certain Numerals

duo, two

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs <i>or</i> duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, three

mille, thousand

	M. AND F.	N.	SING.	PL. (N.)
NOM.	trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
GEN.	trium	trium	mille	mīlium
DAT.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus
ACC.	trīs <i>or</i> trēs	tria	mille	mīlia
ABL.	tribus	tribus	mille	mīlibus

## 481. Declension of Personal Pronouns

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
NOM.	ego, <i>I.</i>	tū, <i>you.</i>
GEN.	meī, <i>of me.</i>	tui, <i>of you.</i>
DAT.	mihi	tibi
ACC.	mē	tē
ABL.	mē	tē

PLURAL

NOM.	nōs, <i>we.</i>	vōs, <i>you.</i>
GEN.	nostrum <i>and</i> nostrī, <i>of us.</i>	vestrum <i>and</i> vestrī, <i>of you.</i>
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs
ACC.	nōs	vōs
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs

## 482. Declension of Reflexive Pronoun

suī, self

GEN.	suī
DAT.	sibi
ACC.	sē <i>or</i> sēsē
ABL.	sē <i>or</i> sēsē

## 483. Declension of Demonstrative Pronouns

*hic, this**ille, that*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

## PLURAL

NOM.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

*Iste, that (of yours), is declined like ille.**is, this or that*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	ī or eī	eae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	iīs or eīs	iīs or eīs	iīs or eīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	iīs or eīs	iīs or eīs	iīs or eīs

*Idem, the same*

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	īdem	eadem	īdem
GEN.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eidem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

		PLURAL	
NOM.	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem

#### 484. Declension of Intensive Pronoun

*ipse, self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsarum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

#### 485. Declension of Relative Pronoun

*quī, who, which, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

#### 486. Declension of Interrogative Pronoun

*quis, who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 487. Declension of Indefinite Pronouns

**quis, any**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae <i>or</i> qua	quid (quod)
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

## PLURAL

NOM.	quī	quae	quae <i>or</i> qua
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae <i>or</i> qua
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

**aliquis, some**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

## PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

**quisque, each**

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)
GEN.	cūiusque	cūiusque	cūiusque
DAT.	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)
ABL.	quōque	quāque	quōque

**quīdam, a certain**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
GEN.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quemdam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

## PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

**quisquam, any one**

	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam
GEN.	cūiusquam	cūiusquam
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam

**488.****Personal Endings**

## SINGULAR

PERSON	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	PERF. IND. ACT.	PRES. IMP. ACT.	PRES. IMP. PASS
FIRST :	<b>ō</b> or <b>m</b>	<b>r</b>	<b>ī</b>		
SECOND :	<b>s</b>	<b>ris</b> or <b>re</b>	<b>istī</b>	<i>none</i>	<b>re</b>
THIRD :	<b>t</b>	<b>tur</b>	<b>it</b>		

## PLURAL

FIRST :	<b>mus</b>	<b>mur</b>	<b>imus</b>		
SECOND :	<b>tis</b>	<b>minī</b>	<b>istis</b>	<b>te</b>	<b>minī</b>
THIRD :	<b>nt</b>	<b>ntur</b>	<b>ērunt</b> or <b>ēre</b>		

## 489

## First Conjugation

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amō, <i>I love, am loving, do love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amās, <i>you love, are loving, do love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amat, <i>he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amāmus, <i>we love, are loving, do love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amātis, <i>you love, are loving, do love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amant, <i>they love, are loving, do love.</i>

## PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amābam, <i>I was loving, loved, did love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amābās, <i>you were loving, loved, did love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amābat, <i>he was loving, loved, did love.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amābāmus, <i>we were loving, loved, did love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amābātis, <i>you were loving, loved, did love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amābant, <i>they were loving, loved, did love.</i>

## FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amābō, <i>I shall love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amābis, <i>you will love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amābit, <i>he will love.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amābimus, <i>we shall love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amābitis, <i>you will love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amābunt, <i>they will love.</i>

## First Conjugation

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love**

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

#### SINGULAR

- FIRST PERSON: *amor, I am (being) loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amāris or amāre, you are (being) loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amātur, he (she, it) is (being) loved.*

#### PLURAL

- FIRST PERSON: *amāmur, we are (being) loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amāminī, you are (being) loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amantur, they are (being) loved.*

### PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE

#### SINGULAR

- FIRST PERSON: *amābar, I was (being) loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amābaris or amābare, you were (being) loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amābatur, he was (being) loved.*

#### PLURAL

- FIRST PERSON: *amābāmur, we were (being) loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amābāminī, you were (being) loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amābantur, they were (being) loved.*

### FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

#### SINGULAR

- FIRST PERSON: *amābor, I shall be loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amāberis or amābere, you will be loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amābitur, he will be loved.*

#### PLURAL

- FIRST PERSON: *amābimur, we shall be loved.*  
 SECOND PERSON: *amābiminī, you will be loved.*  
 THIRD PERSON: *amābuntur, they will be loved.*

## PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amāvī, <i>I have loved, loved, did love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāvistī, <i>you have loved, loved, did love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāvit, <i>he has loved, loved, did love.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amāvimus, <i>we have loved, loved, did love.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāvistis, <i>you have loved, loved, did love.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāvērunt or amāvēre, <i>they have loved, loved, did love.</i>

## PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amāveram, <i>I had loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāverās, <i>you had loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāverat, <i>he had loved.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amāverāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāverātis, <i>you had loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāverant, <i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	amāverō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

## PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātus sum</b> , <i>I have been loved, was loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātus es</b> , <i>you have been loved, were loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātus est</b> , <i>he has been loved, was loved.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātī sumus</b> , <i>we have been loved, were loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātī estis</b> , <i>you have been loved, were loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātī sunt</b> , <i>they have been loved, were loved.</i>

## PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātus eram</b> , <i>I had been loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātus erās</b> , <i>you had been loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātus erat</b> , <i>he had been loved.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātī erāmus</b> , <i>we had been loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātī erātis</b> , <i>you had been loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātī erant</b> , <i>they had been loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

## SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātus erō</b> , <i>I shall have been loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātus eris</b> , <i>you will have been loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātus erit</b> , <i>he will have been loved.</i>

## PLURAL

FIRST PERSON :	<b>amātī erimus</b> , <i>we shall have been loved.</i>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amātī eritis</b> , <i>you will have been loved.</i>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amātī erunt</b> , <i>they will have been loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

	PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
	SINGULAR			
FIRST PERSON :	<b>amem</b>	<b>amārem</b>	<b>amāverim</b>	<b>amāvisssem</b>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amēs</b>	<b>amārēs</b>	<b>amāveris</b>	<b>amāvissēs</b>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>amet</b>	<b>amāret</b>	<b>amāverit</b>	<b>amāvisset</b>
	PLURAL			
FIRST PERSON :	<b>amēmus</b>	<b>amārēmus</b>	<b>amāverimus</b>	<b>amāvissēmus</b>
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amētis</b>	<b>amārētis</b>	<b>amāveritis</b>	<b>amāvissētis</b>
THIRD PERSON :	<b>ament</b>	<b>amārent</b>	<b>amāverint</b>	<b>amāvissent</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amā, love (thou).</b>	<b>amāte, love (ye).</b>

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT ACTIVE :	<b>amāre, to love.</b>
PERFECT ACTIVE :	<b>amāvisse, to have loved.</b>
FUTURE ACTIVE :	<b>amātūrus esse, to be about to love.</b>

## PARTICIPLES

PRESENT ACTIVE :	<b>amāns, loving.</b>
FUTURE ACTIVE :	<b>amātūrus, about to love.</b>

## GERUND

GEN.	<b>amandī, of loving.</b>
DAT.	<b>amandō, for loving.</b>
ACC.	<b>amandum, loving.</b>
ABL.	<b>amandō, by loving.</b>

## SUPINE

<b>amātum, to love.</b>
<b>amātū, to love.</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
SINGULAR			
<b>amer</b>	<b>amārer</b>	<b>amātus sim</b>	<b>amātus essem</b>
<b>amēris or amēre</b>	<b>amārēris or amārēre</b>	<b>amātus sis</b>	<b>amātus essēs</b>
<b>amētur</b>	<b>amārētur</b>	<b>amātus sit</b>	<b>amātus esset</b>
PLURAL			
<b>amēmur</b>	<b>amārēmur</b>	<b>amātī simus</b>	<b>amātī essemus</b>
<b>amēminī</b>	<b>amārēminī</b>	<b>amātī sītis</b>	<b>amātī essētis</b>
<b>amentur</b>	<b>amārentur</b>	<b>amātī sint</b>	<b>amātī essent</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
SECOND PERSON :	<b>amāre, be (thou) loved.</b>	<b>amāminī, be (ye) loved</b>

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT PASSIVE :	<b>amārī, to be loved.</b>
PERFECT PASSIVE :	<b>amātus esse, to have been loved.</b>
FUTURE PASSIVE :	<b>amātum irī, to be about to be loved.</b>

## PARTICIPLES

PERFECT PASSIVE :	<b>amātus, having been loved, loved.</b>
GERUNDIVE :	<b>amandus, to be loved.</b>

### 490. Four Regular Conjugations

FIRST :	<b>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love</b>
SECOND :	<b>monēō, monēre, monuī, monitum, advise</b>
THIRD :	<b>regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, guide</b>
FOURTH :	<b>audiō, audire, audivī, auditum, hear</b>

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<b>amō</b>	<b>monēō</b>	<b>regō</b>	<b>audiō</b>
<b>amās</b>	<b>monēs</b>	<b>regis</b>	<b>audis</b>
<b>amat</b>	<b>monet</b>	<b>regit</b>	<b>audit</b>
<b>amāmus</b>	<b>monēmus</b>	<b>regimus</b>	<b>audīmus</b>
<b>amātis</b>	<b>monētis</b>	<b>regitis</b>	<b>auditis</b>
<b>amant</b>	<b>monent</b>	<b>regunt</b>	<b>audiunt</b>

#### PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<b>amābam</b>	<b>monēbam</b>	<b>regēbam</b>	<b>audiēbam</b>
<b>amābās</b>	<b>monēbās</b>	<b>regēbās</b>	<b>audiēbās</b>
<b>amābat</b>	<b>monēbat</b>	<b>regēbat</b>	<b>audiēbat</b>
<b>amābāmus</b>	<b>monēbāmus</b>	<b>regēbāmus</b>	<b>audiēbāmus</b>
<b>amābātis</b>	<b>monēbātis</b>	<b>regēbātis</b>	<b>audiēbātis</b>
<b>amābant</b>	<b>monēbant</b>	<b>regēbant</b>	<b>audiēbant</b>

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<b>amābō</b>	<b>monēbō</b>	<b>regam</b>	<b>audiam</b>
<b>amābis</b>	<b>monēbis</b>	<b>regēs</b>	<b>audiēs</b>
<b>amābit</b>	<b>monēbit</b>	<b>reget</b>	<b>audiet</b>
<b>amābimus</b>	<b>monēbimus</b>	<b>regēmus</b>	<b>audiēmus</b>
<b>amābitis</b>	<b>monēbitis</b>	<b>regētis</b>	<b>audiētis</b>
<b>amābunt</b>	<b>monēbunt</b>	<b>regent</b>	<b>audient</b>

## Four Regular Conjugations

FIRST :	<b>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love</b>
SECOND :	<b>moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, advise</b>
THIRD :	<b>regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, guide</b>
FOURTH :	<b>audiō, audīre, audivī, auditum, hear</b>

## PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<b>amor</b>	<b>moneor</b>	<b>regor</b>	<b>audior</b>
<b>amāris (-re)</b>	<b>monēris (-re)</b>	<b>regeris (-re)</b>	<b>audīris (-re)</b>
<b>amātur</b>	<b>monētur</b>	<b>regitur</b>	<b>auditur</b>
<b>amāmur</b>	<b>monēmur</b>	<b>regimur</b>	<b>audīmur</b>
<b>amāminī</b>	<b>monēminī</b>	<b>regiminī</b>	<b>audīminī</b>
<b>amantur</b>	<b>monentur</b>	<b>reguntur</b>	<b>audiuntur</b>

## PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<b>amābar</b>	<b>monēbar</b>	<b>regēbar</b>	<b>audiēbar</b>
<b>amābāris (-re)</b>	<b>monēbāris (-re)</b>	<b>regēbāris (-re)</b>	<b>audiēbāris (-re)</b>
<b>amābātur</b>	<b>monēbātur</b>	<b>regēbātur</b>	<b>audiēbātur</b>
<b>amābāmur</b>	<b>monēbāmur</b>	<b>regēbāmur</b>	<b>audiēbāmur</b>
<b>amābāminī</b>	<b>monēbāminī</b>	<b>regēbāminī</b>	<b>audiēbāminī</b>
<b>amābantur</b>	<b>monēbantur</b>	<b>regēbantur</b>	<b>audiēbantur</b>

## FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<b>amābor</b>	<b>monēbor</b>	<b>regar</b>	<b>audiar</b>
<b>amāberis (-re)</b>	<b>monēberis (-re)</b>	<b>regēris (-re)</b>	<b>audiēris (-re)</b>
<b>amābitur</b>	<b>monēbitur</b>	<b>regētur</b>	<b>audiētur</b>
<b>amābimur</b>	<b>monēbimur</b>	<b>regēmur</b>	<b>audiēmur</b>
<b>amābiminī</b>	<b>monēbiminī</b>	<b>regēminī</b>	<b>audiēminī</b>
<b>amābuntur</b>	<b>monēbuntur</b>	<b>regentur</b>	<b>audientur</b>

## PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
amāvit	monuīt	rēxit	audīvit
amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)	monuērunt (-ēre)	rēxērunt (-ēre)	audīvērunt (-ēre)

## PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audiveram
amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat
amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audiverō
amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amem	moneam	regam	audiam
amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
amet	moneat	regat	audiat
amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
ament	moneant	regant	audiant

## PAST SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audīrēs
amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret
amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audīrētis

## PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	auditus sum
amātus es	monitus es	rēctus es	auditus es
amātus est	monitus est	rēctus est	auditus est
amātī sumus	monitī sumus	rēctī sumus	audītī sumus
amātī estis	monitī estis	rēctī estis	audītī estis
amātī sunt	monitī sunt	rēctī sunt	audītī sunt

## PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	auditus eram
amātus erās	monitus erās	rēctus erās	auditus erās
amātus erat	monitus erat	rēctus erat	auditus erat
amātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	rēctī erāmus	audītī erāmus
amātī erātis	monitī erātis	rēctī erātis	audītī erātis
amātī erant	monitī erant	rēctī erant	audītī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	auditus erō
amātus eris	monitus eris	rēctus eris	auditus eris
amātus erit	monitus erit	rēctus erit	auditus erit
amātī erimus	monitī erimus	rēctī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	monitī eritis	rēctī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	monitī erunt	rēctī erunt	audītī erunt

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amer	monear	regar	audiar
amēris (-re)	monēāris (-re)	regāris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
amētur	monēātur	regātur	audiātur
amēmur	monēāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
amēminī	monēāminī	regāminī	audiāminī
amentur	monēantur	regantur	audiantur

## PAST SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amārer	monērer	regerer	audirer
amārēris (-re)	monērēris (-re)	regerēris (-re)	audirēris (-re)
amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audirētur
amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audirēmur
amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	audirēminī
amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audirentur

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

<b>amāverim</b>	<b>monuerim</b>	<b>rēxerim</b>	<b>audīverim</b>
<b>amāverīs</b>	<b>monuerīs</b>	<b>rēxerīs</b>	<b>audīverīs</b>
<b>amāverit</b>	<b>monuerit</b>	<b>rēxerit</b>	<b>audīverit</b>
<b>amāverīmus</b>	<b>monuerīmus</b>	<b>rēxerīmus</b>	<b>audīverīmus</b>
<b>amāverītis</b>	<b>monuerītis</b>	<b>rēxerītis</b>	<b>audīverītis</b>
<b>amāverint</b>	<b>monuerint</b>	<b>rēxerint</b>	<b>audīverint</b>

## PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

<b>amāvīsem</b>	<b>monuīsem</b>	<b>rēxīsem</b>	<b>audīvīsem</b>
<b>amāvīssēs</b>	<b>monuīssēs</b>	<b>rēxīssēs</b>	<b>audīvīssēs</b>
<b>amāvīssēt</b>	<b>monuīssēt</b>	<b>rēxīssēt</b>	<b>audīvīssēt</b>
<b>amāvīssēmūs</b>	<b>monuīssēmūs</b>	<b>rēxīssēmūs</b>	<b>audīvīssēmūs</b>
<b>amāvīssētis</b>	<b>monuīssētis</b>	<b>rēxīssētis</b>	<b>audīvīssētis</b>
<b>amāvīssent</b>	<b>monuīssent</b>	<b>rēxīssent</b>	<b>audīvīssent</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

SING. <b>amā</b>	<b>monē</b>	<b>rege</b>	<b>audī</b>
PL. <b>amāte</b>	<b>monēte</b>	<b>regite</b>	<b>audite</b>

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ACT. <b>amāre</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>regere</b>	<b>audīre</b>
PERF. ACT. <b>amāvīsse</b>	<b>monuīsse</b>	<b>rēxīsse</b>	<b>audīvīsse</b>
FUT. ACT. <b>amātūrus esse</b>	<b>monitūrus esse</b>	<b>rēctūrus esse</b>	<b>auditūrus esse</b>

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. ACT. <b>amāns</b>	<b>monēns</b>	<b>regēns</b>	<b>audiēns</b>
FUT. ACT. <b>amātūrus</b>	<b>monitūrus</b>	<b>rēctūrus</b>	<b>auditūrus</b>

## GERUND

GEN. <b>amandī</b>	<b>monendī</b>	<b>regendī</b>	<b>audiendī</b>
DAT. <b>amandō</b>	<b>monendō</b>	<b>regendō</b>	<b>audiendō</b>
ACC. <b>amandum</b>	<b>monendum</b>	<b>regendum</b>	<b>audiendum</b>
ABL. <b>amandō</b>	<b>monendō</b>	<b>regendō</b>	<b>audiendō</b>

## SUPINE

ACC. <b>amātum</b>	<b>monitum</b>	<b>rēctum</b>	<b>auditum</b>
ABL. <b>amātū</b>	<b>monitū</b>	<b>rēctū</b>	<b>auditū</b>

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	audītus sim
amātus sis	monitus sis	rēctus sis	audītus sis
amātus sit	monitus sit	rēctus sit	audītus sit
amātī simus	monitī simus	rēctī simus	audītī simus
amātī sitis	monitī sitis	rēctī sitis	audītī sitis
amātī sint	monitī sint	rēctī sint	audītī sint

## PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	audītus essem
amātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	audītus essēs
amātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	audītus esset
amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	audītī essēmus
amātī essētis	monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	audītī essētis
amātī essent	monitī essent	rēctī essent	audītī essent

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

SING.	amāre	monēre	regere	audire
PL.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audiminī

## INFINITIVE

PRES. PASS.	amārī	monērī	regī	audirī
PERF. PASS.	amātus esse	monitus esse	rēctus esse	audītus esse
FUT. PASS.	amātum irī	monitum irī	rēctum irī	audītum irī

## PARTICIPLES

PERF. PASS.	amātus	monitus	rēctus	audītus
GERUNDIVE	amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus

491. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT			
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis (-re)	capiāris (-re)
capit	capiat	capitur	capīātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiant	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
PAST			
capiebam	caperem	capiebar	caperer
capiebās	caperēs	capiebāris (-re)	caperēris (-re)
capiebat	caperet	capiebātur	caperētur
capiebāmus	caperēmus	capiebāmur	caperēmur
capiebātis	caperētis	capiebāminī	caperēminī
capiebant	caperent	capiebantur	caperentur
FUTURE			
capiam		capiar	
capies		capieris (-re)	
capiet		capietur	
capiemus		capiemur	
capietis		capiemini	
capient		capientur	
PERFECT			
cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
cēpistī	cēperis	captus es	captus sis
cēpīt	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
cēpimus	cēperimus	capti sumus	capti simus
cēpistis	cēperitis	capti estis	capti sitis
cēperunt (-ēre)	cēperint	capti sunt	capti sint

## PAST PERFECT

cēperam	cēpissēm	captus eram	captus essem
cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essēs
cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	capti erāmus	capti essēmus
cēperātis	cēpissētis	capti erātis	capti essētis
cēperant	cēpissent	capti erant	capti essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō	captus erō
cēperis	captus eris
cēperit	captus erit
cēperimus	capti erimus
cēperitis	capti eritis
cēperint	capti erunt

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. cape	PL. capite	SING. capere	PL. capimini
------------	------------	--------------	--------------

## INFINITIVE

PRES. capere	capī
PERF. cēpisse	captus esse
FUT. captūrus esse	captum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns	PERF. captus
FUT. captūrus	GERUNDIVE capiendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

GEN. capiendī	
DAT. capiendō	
ACC. capiendum	captum
ABL. capiendō	captū

## 492.

## Deponent Verbs

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

cōnor, *I try, am trying, do try.*  
 cōnārīs (-re), *you try, are trying, do try.*  
 cōnātur, *he tries, is trying, does try.*  
 cōnāmur, *we try, are trying, do try.*  
 cōnāminī, *you try, are trying, do try.*  
 cōnantur, *they try, are trying, do try.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

cōner  
 cōnērīs (-re)  
 cōnētur  
 cōnēmur  
 cōnēminī  
 cōnentur

## PAST

cōnābar, *I was trying, tried, did try.*  
 cōnābārīs (-re), *you were trying, tried, did try.*  
 cōnābātur, *he was trying, tried, did try.*  
 cōnābāmur, *we were trying, tried, did try.*  
 cōnābāminī, *you were trying, tried, did try.*  
 cōnābantur, *they were trying, tried, did try.*

cōnārer  
 cōnārērīs (-re)  
 cōnārētur  
 cōnārēmur  
 cōnārēminī  
 cōnārentur

## FUTURE

cōnābor, *I shall try.*  
 cōnāberīs (-re), *you will try.*  
 cōnābitur, *he will try.*  
 cōnābimur, *we shall try.*  
 cōnābiminī, *you will try.*  
 cōnābuntur, *they will try.*

## PERFECT

cōnātus sum, *I have tried, tried, did try.*  
 cōnātus es, *you have tried, tried, did try.*  
 cōnātus est, *he has tried, tried, did try.*  
 cōnātī sumus, *we have tried, tried, did try.*  
 cōnātī estis, *you have tried, tried, did try.*  
 cōnātī sunt, *they have tried, tried, did try.*

cōnātus sim  
 cōnātus sis  
 cōnātus sit  
 cōnātī simus  
 cōnātī sitis  
 cōnātī sint

## PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram, *I had tried.*  
 cōnātus erās, *you had tried.*  
 cōnātus erat, *he had tried.*

cōnātus essem  
 cōnātus essēs  
 cōnātus esset

cōnātī erāmus, *we had tried.*  
 cōnātī erātis, *you had tried.*  
 cōnātī erant, *they had tried.*

cōnātī essēmus  
 cōnātī essētis  
 cōnātī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō, *I shall have tried.*  
 cōnātus eris, *you will have tried.*  
 cōnātus erit, *he will have tried.*

cōnātī erimus, *we shall have tried.*  
 cōnātī eritis, *you will have tried.*  
 cōnātī erunt, *they will have tried.*

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. cōnāre, *try (thou).*

PL. cōnāminī, *try (ye).*

## INFINITIVE

PRES. cōnārī, *to try.*

PERF. cōnātus esse, *to have tried.*

FUT. cōnātūrus esse, *to be about to try.*

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. cōnāns, *trying.*

PERF. cōnātus, *having tried*

FUT. cōnātūrus, *about to try.*

GERUNDIVE cōnandus, *to be tried.*

## GERUND

GEN. cōnandī, *of trying.*

DAT. cōnandō, *for trying.*

ACC. cōnandum, *trying.*

ABL. cōnandō, *by trying.*

## SUPINE

cōnātum, *to try.*

cōnātū, *to try.*

493. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *sum***sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

sum, *I am.*es, *you are.*est, *he is.*sumus, *we are.*estis, *you are.*sunt, *they are.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

sim

sīs

sit

sīmus

sītis

sint

## PAST

eram, *I was.*erās, *you were.*erat, *he was.*

essem

essēs

esset

erāmus, *we were.*erātis, *you were.*erant, *they were.*

essēmus

essētis

essent

## FUTURE

erō, *I shall be.*eris, *you will be.*erit, *he will be.*erimus, *we shall be.*eritis, *you will be.*erunt, *they will be.*

## PERFECT

fui, *I have been, was.*fuisti, *you have been, were.*fuit, *he has been, was.*

fuerim

fueris

fuerit

fuimus, *we have been, were.*fuistis, *you have been, were.*fuerunt (-ere), *they have been, were.*

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

## PAST PERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been.</i>	<i>fuissem</i>
<i>fueraſ, you had been.</i>	<i>fuiſſeſ</i>
<i>fueraſ, he had been.</i>	<i>fuiſſet</i>
<i>fueraſ, we had been.</i>	<i>fuiſſeſ</i>
<i>fueraſ, you had been.</i>	<i>fuiſſeſ</i>
<i>fueraſ, they had been.</i>	<i>fuiſſent</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuero, I shall have been.</i>
<i>fuero, you will have been.</i>
<i>fuero, he will have been.</i>
<i>fuero, we shall have been.</i>
<i>fuero, you will have been.</i>
<i>fuero, they will have been.</i>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. <i>es, be (thou).</i>	PL. <i>este, be (ye).</i>
-----------------------------	---------------------------

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLE

PRES. <i>esse, to be.</i>	
PERF. <i>fuisse, to have been.</i>	
FUT. <i>futurus esse or fore, to be about to be.</i>	<i>futurus, about to be.</i>

494. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *possum*

*possum, posse, potui, be able*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<i>possum</i>	<i>possim</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>possis</i>
<i>potest</i>	<i>possit</i>
<i>possumus</i>	<i>possimus</i>
<i>potestis</i>	<i>possitis</i>
<i>possunt</i>	<i>possint</i>

	PAST	
poteram		possem
poterās		possēs
poterat		posset
poterāmus		possēmus
poterātis		possētis
poterant		possent
	FUTURE	
poterō		
poteris		
poterit		
poterimus		
poteritis		
poterunt		
	PERFECT	
potuī		potuerim
potuistī		potueris
potuit		potuerit
potuimus		potuerimus
potuistis		potueritis
potuērunt (-ēre)		potuerint
	PAST PERFECT	
potueram		potuissem
potuerās		potuissēs
potuerat		potuisset
potuerāmus		potuissēmus
potuerātis		potuissētis
potuerant		potuissent
	FUTURE PERFECT	
potuerō		
potueris		
potuerit		
potuerimus		
potueritis		
potuerint		
	INFINITIVE	
PRES. posse		PERF. potuisse

495. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *prōsum*

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, benefī**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

prōsum  
prōdes  
prōdest

prōsim  
prōsīs  
prōsit

prōsumus  
prōdestis  
prōsunt

prōsīmus  
prōsītis  
prōsint

## PAST

prōderam  
prōderās  
prōderat

prōdessem  
prōdessēs  
prōdesset

prōderāmus  
prōderātis  
prōderant

prōdessēmus  
prōdessētis  
prōdessent

## FUTURE

prōderō  
prōderis  
prōderit

prōderimus  
prōderitis  
prōderunt

## PERFECT

prōfuī  
prōfuistī  
prōfuit

prōfuerim  
prōfueris  
prōfuerit

prōfuimus  
prōfuistis  
prōfuērunt (-ēre)

prōfuerimus  
prōfueritis  
prōfuerint

## PAST PERFECT

<b>prōfueram</b>	<b>prōfuissem</b>
<b>prōfuerās</b>	<b>prōfuisseās</b>
<b>prōfuerat</b>	<b>prōfuisset</b>
<b>prōfuerāmus</b>	<b>prōfuissemus</b>
<b>prōfuerātis</b>	<b>prōfuissetis</b>
<b>prōfuerant</b>	<b>prōfuisissent</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<b>prōfuerō</b>
<b>prōfueris</b>
<b>prōfuerit</b>
<b>prōfuerimus</b>
<b>prōfueritis</b>
<b>prōfuerint</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. <b>prōdes</b>	PL. <b>prōdeste</b>
---------------------	---------------------

## INFINITIVE

PRES. <b>prōdesse</b>
PERF. <b>prōfuisse</b>
FUT. <b>prōfutūrus esse</b>

## PARTICIPLE

**prōfutūrus**

496. Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*

**volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, *wish*  
**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *be unwilling*  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, *prefer*

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

<b>volō</b>	<b>nōlō</b>	<b>mālō</b>
<b>vīs</b>	<b>nōn vīs</b>	<b>māvīs</b>
<b>vult</b>	<b>nōn vult</b>	<b>māvult</b>
<b>volumus</b>	<b>nōlumus</b>	<b>mālumus</b>
<b>vultis</b>	<b>nōn vultis</b>	<b>māvultis</b>
<b>volunt</b>	<b>nōlunt</b>	<b>mālunt</b>

## PAST

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

## FUTURE

volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet
volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlent	mālent

## PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
voluit	nōluit	māluit
voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
voluērunt (-ēre)	nōluērunt (-ēre)	māluērunt (-ēre)

## PAST PERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<b>velim</b>	<b>nōlim</b>	<b>mālim</b>
<b>velis</b>	<b>nōlis</b>	<b>mālis</b>
<b>velit</b>	<b>nōlit</b>	<b>mālit</b>
<b>velīmus</b>	<b>nōlīmus</b>	<b>mālīmus</b>
<b>velītis</b>	<b>nōlītis</b>	<b>mālītis</b>
<b>velint</b>	<b>nōlint</b>	<b>mālint</b>

## PAST

<b>vellem</b>	<b>nōllem</b>	<b>māllem</b>
<b>vellēs</b>	<b>nōllēs</b>	<b>māllēs</b>
<b>vellet</b>	<b>nōllet</b>	<b>māllet</b>
<b>vellēmus</b>	<b>nōllēmus</b>	<b>māllēmus</b>
<b>vellētis</b>	<b>nōllētis</b>	<b>māllētis</b>
<b>vellent</b>	<b>nōllent</b>	<b>māllent</b>

## PERFECT

<b>voluerim</b>	<b>nōluerim</b>	<b>māluerim</b>
<b>volueris</b>	<b>nōlueris</b>	<b>mālueris</b>
<b>voluerit</b>	<b>nōluerit</b>	<b>māluerit</b>
<b>voluerīmus</b>	<b>nōluerīmus</b>	<b>māluerīmus</b>
<b>voluerītis</b>	<b>nōluerītis</b>	<b>māluerītis</b>
<b>voluerint</b>	<b>nōluerint</b>	<b>māluerint</b>

## PAST PERFECT

<b>voluissem</b>	<b>nōluissem</b>	<b>māluissem</b>
<b>voluissēs</b>	<b>nōluissēs</b>	<b>māluissēs</b>
<b>voluisset</b>	<b>nōluisset</b>	<b>māluisset</b>
<b>voluissēmus</b>	<b>nōluissēmus</b>	<b>māluissēmus</b>
<b>voluissētis</b>	<b>nōluissētis</b>	<b>māluissētis</b>
<b>voluissent</b>	<b>nōluissent</b>	<b>māluissent</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. nōlī PL. nōlīte

## INFINITIVE

<b>PRES. velle</b>	<b>nōlle</b>	<b>mālle</b>
<b>PERF. voluisse</b>	<b>nōluisse</b>	<b>māluisse</b>

## PARTICIPLE

<b>PRES. volēns</b>	<b>nōlēns</b>
---------------------	---------------

497. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *ferō**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT			
<i>ferō</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferar</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>ferās</i>	<i>ferris (-re)</i>	<i>ferāris (-re)</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferat</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>ferātur</i>
<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferātis</i>	<i>feriminī</i>	<i>ferāminī</i>
<i>ferunt</i>	<i>ferant</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	<i>ferantur</i>
PAST			
<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferer</i>
<i>ferēbās</i>	<i>ferrēs</i>	<i>ferēbāris (-re)</i>	<i>ferrōris (-re)</i>
<i>ferēbat</i>	<i>ferret</i>	<i>ferēbātur</i>	<i>ferrōtur</i>
<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>	<i>ferrōmur</i>
<i>ferēbātis</i>	<i>ferrētis</i>	<i>ferēbāminī</i>	<i>ferrōminī</i>
<i>ferēbant</i>	<i>ferrent</i>	<i>ferēbantur</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>
FUTURE			
<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>	
<i>ferēs</i>		<i>ferōris (-re)</i>	
<i>feret</i>		<i>ferētur</i>	
<i>ferēmus</i>		<i>ferēmur</i>	
<i>ferētis</i>		<i>ferēminī</i>	
<i>ferent</i>		<i>ferentur</i>	
PERFECT			
<i>tuli</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
<i>tulistī</i>	<i>tuleris</i>	<i>lātus es</i>	<i>lātus sis</i>
<i>tulit</i>	<i>tulerit</i>	<i>lātus est</i>	<i>lātus sit</i>
<i>tulimus</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>	<i>lāti sumus</i>	<i>lāti simus</i>
<i>tulistis</i>	<i>tuleritis</i>	<i>lāti estis</i>	<i>lāti sitis</i>
<i>tulērunt (-ēre)</i>	<i>tulerint</i>	<i>lāti sunt</i>	<i>lāti sint</i>

## PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulisset	lātus eram	lātus essem
tulerās	tulissetis	lātus erās	lātus essēs
tulerat	tulisset	lātus erat	lātus esset
tulerāmus	tulissetis	lātī erāmus	lātī essēmus
tulerātis	tulissetis	lātī erātis	lātī essētis
tulerant	tulissent	lātī erant	lātī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	lātus erō
tuleris	lātus eris
tulerit	lātus erit
tulerimus	lātī erimus
tuleritis	lātī eritis
tulerint	lātī erunt

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING.	fer	PL.	ferite	SING.	ferre	PL.	ferimini
-------	-----	-----	--------	-------	-------	-----	----------

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	GERUNDIVE	ferendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

GEN.	ferendī	
DAT.	ferendō	
ACC.	ferendum	lātum
ABL.	ferendō	lātū

498. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *eō**eō, Ire, II, itum, go*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
<i>eō</i>		<i>eam</i>
<i>īs</i>		<i>eās</i>
<i>it</i>		<i>eat</i>
<i>īmus</i>		<i>eāmus</i>
<i>ītis</i>		<i>eātis</i>
<i>eunt</i>		<i>eant</i>
	PAST	
<i>ībam</i>		<i>īrem</i>
<i>ībās</i>		<i>īrēs</i>
<i>ībat</i>		<i>īret</i>
<i>ībāmus</i>		<i>īrōmus</i>
<i>ībātis</i>		<i>īrētis</i>
<i>ībant</i>		<i>īrent</i>
	FUTURE	
<i>ībō</i>		
<i>ībīs</i>		
<i>ībit</i>		
<i>ībimus</i>		
<i>ībītis</i>		
<i>ībunt</i>		
	PERFECT	
<i>īī</i>		<i>ierim</i>
<i>īstī</i>		<i>ieris</i>
<i>īit</i>		<i>ierit</i>
<i>īimus</i>		<i>ierimus</i>
<i>īstis</i>		<i>ieritis</i>
<i>īērunt (-ēre)</i>		<i>ierint</i>

## PAST PERFECT

<b>ieram</b>	<b>issem</b>
<b>ierās</b>	<b>issēs</b>
<b>ierat</b>	<b>isset</b>
<b>ierāmus</b>	<b>issēmus</b>
<b>ierātis</b>	<b>issētis</b>
<b>ierant</b>	<b>issent</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<b>ierō</b>
<b>ieris</b>
<b>ierit</b>
<b>ierimus</b>
<b>ieritis</b>
<b>ierint</b>

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING.	<b>ī</b>	PL.	<b>ite</b>
	<b>INFINITIVE</b>		<b>PARTICIPLES</b>
PRES.	<b>ire</b>		<b>iēns</b> ( <i>genitive, euntis</i> )
PERF.	<b>isse</b>		
FUT.	<b>itūrus esse</b>		<b>itūrus</b>
	<b>GERUND</b>		<b>SUPINE</b>
GEN.	<b>eundī</b>		
DAT.	<b>eundō</b>		
ACC.	<b>eundum</b>		<b>itum</b>
ABL.	<b>eundō</b>		<b>itū</b>

499. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *fiō*

**fiō, fieri, factus sum, be done**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
<b>fiō</b>		<b>fiam</b>
<b>fīs</b>		<b>fīās</b>
<b>fit</b>		<b>fiat</b>
<b>fimus</b>		<b>fīāmus</b>
<b>fitis</b>		<b>fīātis</b>
<b>fiunt</b>		<b>fiant</b>

	PAST	
	fiēbam	fierem
	fiēbās	fierēs
	fiēbat	fieret
	fiēbāmus	fiērēmus
	fiēbātis	fiērētis
	fiēbant	fierent
	FUTURE	
	fiam	
	fiēs	
	fiet	
	fiēmus	
	fiētis	
	fient	
	PERFECT	
	factus sum	factus sim
	factus es	factus sis
	factus est	factus sit
	facti sumus	facti simus
	facti estis	facti sitis
	facti sunt	facti sint
	PAST PERFECT	
	factus eram	factus essem
	factus erās	factus essēs
	factus erat	factus esset
	facti erāmus	facti essēmus
	facti erātis	facti essētis
	facti erant	facti essent
	FUTURE PERFECT	
	factus erō	
	factus eris	
	factus erit	
	facti erimus	
	facti eritis	
	facti erunt	
	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	ferī	
PERF.	factus esse	factus
FUT.	factum iri	GERUNDIVE faciendus

## RULES OF SYNTAX

(The numbers following the rules refer to the sections in which the constructions are explained.)

**500. Agreement of Verb.** — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (16).

**501. Agreement of Noun.** — An appositive or predicate noun agrees in case with the noun to which it belongs. (72).

**502. Agreement of Adjective.** — An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies. (80).

**503. Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction in which it is used. (143).

**504. Subject.** — The subject is in the nominative. (31).

**505. Descriptive Genitive.** — The genitive of a noun and adjective is used to describe a person or thing. (111).

**506. Indirect Object.** — The indirect object of a transitive verb is in the dative. (57).

**507. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** — Certain intransitive verbs<sup>1</sup> govern the dative. (224).

**508. Dative with Compound Verbs.** — Certain compound verbs<sup>2</sup> govern the dative. (241).

**509. Dative with Adjectives.** — Certain adjectives<sup>3</sup> take the dative. (89).

**510. Dative of Purpose or Tendency.** — The dative is used to express purpose and tendency. (301).

<sup>1</sup> In this book are given *cōsulō, fidō, imperō, nocēō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō*.

<sup>2</sup> In this book are given *īferō, occurrō, praecipīō, praeficiō, praestō, prōsum, succēdō*.

<sup>3</sup> In this book are given *amicus, idōneus, propinquus, propior, proximus, similis, dissimilis*.

**511. Double Dative Construction.**—The dative of purpose or tendency is often accompanied by another dative denoting the person concerned. (302).

**512. Dative of Possession.**—The dative is used with **sum** to express possession. (421).

**513. Dative of Agent.**—The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the agent. (430).

**514. Direct Object.**—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (32).

**515. Accusative of Extent or Duration.**—The accusative is used to express extent of space and duration of time. (339).

**516. Ablative of Separation.**—Verbs of separation<sup>1</sup> take the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, or without a preposition. (133).

**517. Ablative of Agent.**—The ablative with **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the person by whom a thing is done. (41).

**518. Ablative of Means.**—The ablative is used to express the means. (64).

**519. Ablative of Accompaniment.**—The ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment. (97).

**520. Ablative of Manner.**—The ablative with **cum** is used to express manner, but **cum** may be omitted when an adjective modifies the noun. (321).

**521. Ablative of Cause or Reason.**—The ablative is used to express cause and reason. (106).

**522. Ablative of Comparison.**—A comparative without **quam** takes the ablative; but when **quam** is used, the words denoting the things compared are in the same case. (309).

**523. Ablative of Measure of Difference.**—The ablative is used to express the measure of difference. (315).

---

<sup>1</sup> Of the verbs of separation given in this book, **carēō** and **liberō** regularly take the ablative without a preposition.

**524. Descriptive Ablative.** — The ablative of a noun and adjective is used to describe a person or thing. (111).

**525. Ablative of Respect.** — The ablative is used to specify the respect in which another word applies. (175).

**526. Ablative of Time.** — The ablative is used to express the time at which or within which a thing is done. (344).

**527. Ablative with Certain Deponents.** — The deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, govern the ablative. (385).

**528. Ablative Absolute.** — The ablative of a noun or pronoun and a predicate participle, noun, or adjective is used to express time, cause, opposition, condition, or other circumstance. (394).

**529. Place Where.** — The ablative with *in* or *sub* is used to express the place where; but names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs* have a locative case to express this idea. (250, 253).

**530. Place to Which.** — The accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub* is used to express the place to which; but a preposition is not used before names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*. (254).

**531. Place from Which.** — The ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* is used to express the place from which; but a preposition is not used before names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*. (255).

**532. Present Indicative with *dum*.** — The present indicative is used with *dum*, *while*. (163).

**533. Perfect Indicative with *postquam* and *ubi*.** — The perfect indicative is used with *postquam* and *ubi* in clauses expressing time. (169).

**534. Clauses of Purpose.** — The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *nē* in clauses expressing purpose. (261).

**535. Relative Clauses of Purpose.** — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses expressing purpose. (267).

**536. *Quō*-Clauses of Purpose.** — Clauses of purpose in which there is a comparative are usually introduced by *quō*, instead of *ut*. (412).

**537. Substantive Clauses of Volition.** — The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *nē* in substantive clauses expressing what is wanted.<sup>1</sup> (268).

**538. Clauses of Result.** — The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *ut nōn* in clauses expressing result. (280).

**539. Relative Clauses of Result.** — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses expressing result. (281).

**540. Substantive Clauses of Result.** — The subjunctive is used with *ut* and *ut nōn* in clauses which are subject or object of a verb expressing accomplishment or subject of a verb expressing occurrence.<sup>2</sup> (286).

**541. Descriptive Relative Clauses.** — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses describing the person or thing denoted by an indefinite antecedent. (292).

**542. Cum-Clauses of Situation.** — The past and past perfect subjunctive are used with *cum* in clauses describing the situation. (407).

**543. Causal and Adversative cum-Clauses.** — The subjunctive is used with *cum* in clauses expressing cause and opposition. (402).

**544. Indirect Statements.** — The infinitive, with an accusative as subject, is used in indirect statements. (368).

**545. Indirect Subordinate Clauses.** — The subjunctive is used in indirect subordinate clauses. (390).

**546. Indirect Questions.** — The subjunctive is used in indirect questions. (327).

**547. Harmony of Tenses.** — The present or perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past or past perfect when the principal verb represents a past action. The present and past subjunctive represent an action at or after the time of the principal verb; the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cohortor, imperō, moneō, persuādeō, petō, postulō, and praecipō* are given in this book with substantive clauses of volition.

<sup>2</sup> *Faciō, efficiō, fiō, and accidō* are given in this book with substantive clauses of result.

perfect and past perfect represent an action before the time of the principal verb. (333).

**548. Use of Infinitive Tenses.** — The present infinitive represents an action at the time of the verb on which it depends. The perfect infinitive represents an action before the time of the verb on which it depends. The future infinitive represents an action after the time of the verb on which it depends. (374).

**549. Use of Supine in *um*.** — The supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express purpose. (440).

**550. Present and Past Neutral Conditional Complexes.** — The present, past, perfect, and past perfect indicative are used in conditional complexes which imply neither the occurrence nor the non-occurrence of the action. (454, 455).

**551. More Vivid Future Conditional Complexes.** — The future and future perfect indicative are used in more vivid future conditional complexes. (450, 455).

**552. Less Vivid Future Conditional Complexes.** — The present and perfect subjunctive are used in less vivid future conditional complexes. (450, 455).

**553. Conditional Complexes Contrary to Fact.** — The past and past perfect subjunctive are used in conditional complexes which imply the non-occurrence of the action. The past is used to imply the non-occurrence of an action in present time, the past perfect to imply the non-occurrence of an action in past time. (454, 455).

## POSITION OF WORDS

**554. Emphasis.** — The position of words in a Latin sentence is largely determined by emphasis.

**555. Subject and Verb.** — The subject normally stands first in the sentence and the verb last.

**556. Objects.** — The indirect object normally stands before the direct object.

**557. Vocative.** — The vocative normally follows one or more words.

**558. Adjective.** — An adjective may either precede or follow the noun it modifies. A possessive adjective normally follows the noun it modifies.

**559. Adverb.** — An adverb normally stands just before the word it modifies.

**560. Genitive.** — A genitive normally follows the noun it modifies.

**561. Adjective and Genitive.** — When an adjective and a genitive modify the same noun, the order is often adjective, genitive, modified noun.

**562. Adjective and Monosyllabic Preposition.** — When a monosyllabic preposition is used with a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition often stands between the adjective and the noun.

**563. -que.** — The enclitic **-que** is joined to the word it adds; if it adds a phrase or clause, it is usually joined to the first word of that phrase or clause.

**564. -ne.** — The enclitic **-ne** is usually joined to the first word in the question.

**565. Enclitic -cum.** — When the preposition **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it follows and is joined to the pronoun.

**566. Particular Words.** — The words **populus Rōmānus** and **dī immortalēs** regularly stand in this order. **Autem** and **enim** cannot stand first in a sentence or clause, but are usually second. **Quoque** regularly follows the word it modifies. **Ferē** usually follows the word it modifies. **Quidem** follows the word it emphasizes. **Inquit** follows one or more words of the quotation. **Causā** follows the genitive.



## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to the sections in which the inflection of the words is shown, but no reference is given where the inflection is regular. The etymologies given in this vocabulary show from what the word is derived — not, as in the vocabularies of the lessons, any related word.

### A

- ab or ā, prep. with abl., *away from, from; by; in, on.*
- abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum, *hide, conceal.* [ab + dō].
- absēns, absentis, 324 (note), *absent.* [absum].
- absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, 493, *be away, be absent, be distant.* [ab + sum].
- ac, see atque.
- accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *come to, approach.*
- accidō, accidere, accidī, *happen.*
- accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum, *receive.* [ad + capiō].
- ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp; active.*
- aciēs, -ēi, f., *line of battle.*
- ācritēr, adv., *sharply, fiercely.* [ācer].
- ad, prep. with acc., *to; near, at.*
- addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, *lead to, bring; induce.* [ad + dūcō].
- adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectum, *visit, afflict.* [ad + faciō].
- aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access.*
- adiungō, adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnctum, *join to, join, add.*
- adorior, adoriri, adortus sum, *attack.*
- adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m., *young man, youth.*
- adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival.*
- adversārius, -ī, m., *opponent, adversary.*
- aedificium, -ī, n., *building.* [aedificō].
- aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātum, *build.*
- aequus, -a, -um, *level, fair, favorable.*
- ager, agrī, m., *field, territory.*
- agger, aggeris, m., *agger, a mound used in military operations.*
- agmen, agminis, n., *column (of a marching army); novissimum agmen, rear.* [agō].
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; treat.*
- aliquis (aliqui), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), 487, *some, some one, something.*
- alius, alia, aliud, 465, *other, another; alii . . . alii, some . . . others.*
- Allia, -ae, f., *the Allia, a river near Rome.*
- Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., *the Allobroges.*

**Alpēs**, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps*.

**alter**, *altera*, *alterum*, 465, *the other* ;

**alter** . . . **alter**, *one* . . . *the other* ; **alterī** . . . **alterī**, *one party* . . . *the other party*.

**altitudō**, *altitudinis*, f., *height, depth*.

[**altus**].

**altus**, -a, -um, *high, deep*.

**amicitia**, -ae, f., *friendship*. [**amīcus**].

**amicus**, -a, -um, *friendly* ; **amicus**,

-ī, m., *friend*. [**amō**].

**amō**, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*, *love*.

**angustiae**, -ārum, f. pl., *pass, defile*.

[**angustus**].

**angustus**, -a, -um, *narrow*.

**animal**, *animālis*, n., *animal*.

**animus**, -ī, m., *mind* ; *courage*.

**annus**, -ī, m., *year*.

**ante**, prep. with acc., *before*.

**antēā**, adv., *before, previously*.

[**ante** + **is**].

**aperiō**, *aperire*, *aperui*, *apertum*, *open*.

**apertus**, -a, -um, *open, unprotected*.

[**aperiō**].

**appellō**, *appellāre*, *appellāvī*, *appellātum*, *call, name*.

**Appenninus**, -ī, m., *the Apennines*, mountains of Italy.

**appropinquō**, *appropinquāre*, *appropinquāvī*, *appropinquātum*, *approach*.

**apud**, prep. with acc., *among, with*.

**Āpūlia**, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a division of Italy.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water*.

**Aquilēia**, -ae, f., *Aquileia*, a town.

**Aquitāni**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani, the Aquitanians*.

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar*.

**Arar**, *Araris*, m., *the Arar*, now called *Saône*.

**arbitror**, *arbitrārī*, *arbitrātus sum*, *think*.

**arbor**, *arboris*, f., *tree*.

**arma**, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.

**armō**, *armāre*, *armāvī*, *armātum*, *arm*. [**arma**].

**ascendō**, *ascendere*, *ascendī*, *ascēsum*, *climb, ascend*.

**atque** or **ac**, conj., *and*.

**auctōritās**, *auctōritātis*, f., *influence, authority*.

**audāx**, *audācis*, *bold, daring*. [**audeō**].

**audeō**, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, 382, *dare*.

**audiō**, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *auditum*, *hear*.

**augeō**, *augēre*, *auxī*, *auctum*, *increase*.

**aut**, conj., *or* ; **aut** . . . **aut**, *either* . . . *or*.

**autem**, conj., *however*.

**auxilium**, -ī, n., *aid*. [**augeō**].

**āvertō**, *āvertere*, *āvertī*, *āversum*, *turn aside*. [**ā** + **vertō**].

## B

**barbarus**, -ī, m., *barbarian*.

**Belgae**, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgae, the Belgians*.

**bellum**, -ī, n., *war*.

**bene**, adv., 318, *well, successfully*. [**bonus**].

**beneficium**, -ī, n., *kindness*. [**bene** + **faciō**].

**Bibracte, Bibractis**, n., *Bibracte*, a town.

**Bōiī, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the Boii*.

**bonus, -a, -um**, 476, *good*.

**brevis, breve**, *short*.

## C

**C.**, the abbreviation for *Gāius*.

**caedēs, caedis**, f., *slaughter, carnage*.

**Caesar, Caesaris**, m., *Caesar*.

**calamitās, calamitātis**, f., *disaster*.

**calcar, calcāris**, n., *spur*.

**Campānia, -ae**, f., *Campania*, a division of Italy.

**Cannae, -ārum**, f. pl., *Cannae*, a village.

**Cannēnsis, -e**, *at Cannae, of Cannae*.

**capīō, capere, cēpī, captum**, *take, capture*; *cōnsilium capere, form a plan*.

**captiva, -ae**, f., *captive, prisoner*. [capīō].

**captivus, -ī**, m., *captive, prisoner*. [capīō].

**Capua, -ae**, f., *Capua*, a city of Campania.

**carcer, carceris**, m., *prison*.

**careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus**, *be cut off, be without, lack*.

**castellum, -ī**, n., *stronghold*.

**castra, -ōrum**, n. pl., *camp*.

**causa, -ae**, f., *cause, reason*; *causā, with gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of*.

**celeriter**, adv., *quickly*.

**Celtae, -ārum**, m. pl., *the Celtae, the Celts*.

**centum**, indeclinable, *one hundred*.

**centuriō, centuriōnis**, m., *centurion*, a Roman military officer.

**certus, -a, -um**, *definite, certain*; *certiōrem facere, inform*.

**cēteri, -ae, -a**, pl. adj., *the other*.

**Cimbri, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the Cimbri*.

**circiter**, adv., *about*.

**circum**, prep. with acc., *about*.

**circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum**, 54 (note), *put around, surround*. [circum + dō].

**circumveniō, circumvenire, circumvēnī, circumventum**, *come around, surround*. [circum + veniō].

**citrā**, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.

**civilis, civile, civil**. [civis].

**civis, civis**, m. and f., 192 (note), *citizen, fellow-citizen*.

**civitās, civitātis**, f., *state*. [civis].

**clārus, -a, -um**, *famous, glorious*.

**classis, classis**, f., *fleet*.

**Clastidium, -ī**, n., *Clastidium*, a town.

**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**, *shut, close*.

**coepī, perf.**, *have begun, began*.

**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum**, *consider*; *intend*.

**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum**, *find out, learn*.

**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum**, *collect*; *compel*. [agō].

**cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum**, *encourage, urge*.

**collēga, -ae**, m., *colleague*.

**collis, collis**, m., *hill*.

**committō, committere, commisī, commissum**, with *proelium*, *join battle, begin the battle*. [mittō].

- commodē, adv., *conveniently, effectively*.  
 comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum, *prepare, procure*. [parō].  
 complūrēs, complūra, pl. adj., 330 (note), *several*. [plūs].  
 comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēsum, *seize, arrest*.  
 concēdō, concēdere, concessi, concessum, *yield, grant*.  
 conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum, *win over*.  
 condiciō, condiciōnis, f., *terms, condition*.  
 condō, condere, condidī, conditum, *found, build*. [dō].  
 cōferō, cōferre, contulī, conlātum, 497, *bring together*; sē cōferre, *betake oneself, go*. [ferō].  
 cōfertus, -a, -um, *dense, in close order*.  
 cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfēctum, *finish; exhaust*. [faciō].  
 cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum, *strengthen, establish*.  
 coniciō, conicere, conicēci, coniectum, *hurl*. [iaciō].  
 coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum, *join with, join, unite*.  
 conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, *place*.  
 conloquium, -i, n., *conference*.  
 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*.  
 cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecūtus sum, *follow up; overtake*. [sequor].  
 cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum, *keep, observe*. [servō].  
 cōsidō, cōsidere, cōsēdī, cōsesum, *settle; encamp*.  
 cōsiliū, -i, n., *plan; discretion*.  
 cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti, *take a position; halt*.  
 cōspectus, -ūs, m., *sight*.  
 cōspicor, cōspicārī, cōspicātus sum, *catch sight of, see*.  
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtum, *station, fix, determine*. [statuō].  
 cōsuēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvī, cōsuētum, *become accustomed*; perf., *have become accustomed, be accustomed*.  
 cōsul, cōsulis, m., *consul, chief magistrate of Rome*.  
 cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsul-tum, with dat., *look out for, consult*.  
 cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsī, cōsūptum, *consume, waste*. [sūmō].  
 contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *strive, contend; hasten*.  
 contineō, continēre, continui, contentum, *hold, restrain*. [teneō].  
 contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.  
 conveniō, convenire, convēni, conventum, *come together, assemble*. [veniō].  
 convertō, convertere, converti, conversum, *turn about, reverse*. [vertō].  
 cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance*; pl., *forces, troops*. [ops].  
 cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army)*.  
 corpus, corporis, n., *body*.

cotidiē, adv., *daily*. [diēs].  
 crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *frequent, numerous*.  
 creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, *make, elect*.  
 cum, prep. with abl., *with*.  
 cum, conj., *when; since, as; although, though*.  
 cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *desire*.  
 cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum, *desire, wish*.  
 cūra, -ae, f., *care*.

## D

dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from; about, concerning*.  
 dea, -ae, f., *goddess*.  
 dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitum, *owe, ought*.  
 decem, indeclinable, *ten*.  
 decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., *decemvirs, a board, or commission, of ten men*. [decem + vir].  
 dēditio, dēditiois, f., *surrender*.  
 dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum, *lead down, lead away, withdraw; bring*. [dē + dūcō].  
 dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēsum, *defend*.  
 deinde, adv., *then, next*.  
 dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy*.  
 dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum, *choose, select*.  
 dēmigrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātum, *move away, remove*.  
 dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum, *point out, show*.

dēsērō, dēsērere, dēsērui, dēsertum, *desert*.  
 dēsistō, dēsistere, dēsitī, dēsitum, *cease, give up*.  
 dēsperō, dēsperāre, dēsperāvī, dēsperātum, *be hopeless, despair*. [dē + sperō].  
 dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss*.  
 deus, -ī, m., 463, *god*.  
 dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right; dextra, -ae, f., right hand*.  
 dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, speak*.  
 dictātor, dictātōris, m., *dictator*.  
 diēs, -ēī, m., *day*.  
 difficilis, difficile, 475, *difficult*. [facilis].  
 diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, industry*.  
 dimittō, dimittere, dimisi, dimissum, *send about; send away, dismiss*. [mittō].  
 discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *go away, come off*.  
 dispōnō, dispōnere, disposui, dispositum, *distribute, arrange*. [pōnō].  
 dissimilis, dissimile, 475, with dat., *unlike*. [similis].  
 diū, adv., 478, *long, a long time*.  
 dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum, *divide*.  
 divīnus, -a, -um, *divine, superhuman*.  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, 54 (note), *give*.  
 dolor, dolōris, m., *pain, grief*.  
 domus, -ūs, f., 463, *home*.  
 dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *doubt, hesitate*.  
 ducentī, -ae, -a, pl., *two hundred*. [duo + centum].

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead*.  
 dum, conj., *while*.  
 Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m., *Dumnorix*.  
 duo, duae, duo, 480, *two*.  
 duodecim, indeclinable, *twelve*.  
 [duo + decem].  
 dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander*.  
 [dūcō].

## E

ē, see *ex*.  
 ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātum,  
*bring up, rear*.  
 ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, *lead*  
*out, bring out*. [ē + dūcō].  
 efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, 497,  
*carry away*. [ex + ferō].  
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, *bring*  
*about, accomplish, complete*. [ex  
 + faciō].  
 effugiō, effugere, effūgī, *flee from,*  
*escape*. [ex + fugiō].  
 ego, mei, 481, *I*.  
 ēgredi, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, *go*  
*out, march out*.  
 ēgregius, -a, -um, *uncommon, re-*  
*markable*.  
 elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.  
 enim, conj., *for*.  
 eō, adv., *to that place, thither*. [is].  
 eō, ire, ii, itum, 498, *go*.  
 Ēpirus, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a division of  
 Greece.  
 eques, equitis, m., *horseman*; pl.,  
*cavalry*. [equus].  
 equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*. [eques].  
 equus, -ī, m., *horse*.  
 ēripiō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptum,  
*snatch away, take away; rescue*.

et, conj., *and*; et . . . et, *both . . .*  
*and*.  
 etiam, adv., *even, also*. [et + iam].  
 Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria*, a division  
 of Italy.  
 ex or ē, prep. with abl., *out of,*  
*from*.  
 excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum,  
*go out, withdraw*.  
 exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.  
 existimō, existimāre, existimāvī,  
 existimātum, *think*.  
 exitus, -ūs, m., *outlet, exit*.  
 expeditus, -a, -um, *unobstructed*.  
 expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsū,  
*drive out, expel*. [ex + pellō].  
 explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., *scout*.  
 expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, ex-  
 pugnātum, *take by assault, cap-*  
*ture*. [ex + pugnō].  
 exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, ex-  
 spectātum, *wait for, await*.  
 extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of*.  
 extrēmus, -a, -um, *outermost, last*.

## F

facile, adv., *easily*. [facilis].  
 facilis, facile, 475, *easy*. [faciō].  
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make*;  
 certiōrem facere, *inform*; im-  
 petum facere in, *charge upon*;  
 iter facere, *march*.  
 fāma, -ae, f., *report, fame*.  
 fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*.  
 ferē, adv., *almost*.  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 497, *bear,*  
*carry*.  
 fidēs, -ēī, f., *trust, trustworthiness*;  
 pledge, *protection*. [fidō].

*fidō, fidere, fisis sum, 382, with dat., trust.*

*filia, -ae, f., daughter.*

*filius, -i, m., son.*

*finis, finis, m., end; pl., boundaries, territory.*

*finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors. [finis].*

*fiō, fieri, factus sum, 499, be done, be made; result, happen.*

*firmus, -a, -um, strong.*

*flūmen, flūminis, n., river.*

*fortis, forte, brave.*

*fortiter, adv., bravely. [fortis].*

*fortūna, -ae, f., fortune.*

*fossa, -ae, f., ditch, trench.*

*frāter, frātris, m., 206 (note), brother.*

*frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain; rēs frūmentāria, supply of grain. [frūmentum].*

*frūmentum, -i, n., grain. [fruor].*

*fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, with abl., enjoy.*

*fuga, -ae, f., flight.*

*fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus, flee. [fuga].*

*fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, put to flight, rout. [fuga].*

*fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, with abl., perform.*

## G

*Gallī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Gauls.*

*Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, a country.*

*Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.*

*Garumna, -ae, m., the Garumna, now called Garonne.*

*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, 382, be glad.*

*Genava, -ae, f., Geneva.*

*gēns, gentis, f., tribe.*

*genus, generis, n., race; kind.*

*Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.*

*gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, carry on, wage; rēs gestae, deeds, achievements.*

*gladius, -i, m., sword.*

*Graeci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Greeks.*

*Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.*

*grātia, -ae, f., favor, influence.*

*gravis, grave, heavy; important.*

## H

*habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, have.*

*habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum, dwell, live. [habeō].*

*Hadrūmētum, -i, n., Hadrumetum.*

*Haeduus, -i, m., a Haeduan, the Haeduan; pl., the Haedui, the Haeduans.*

*Hamilcar, Hamilcaris, m., Hamilcar.*

*Hannibal, Hannibalis, m., Hannibal.*

*Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis, m., Hasdrubal.*

*Helvētīi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, the Helvetians.*

*hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters. [hiems].*

*hic, haec, hoc, 483, this.*

*hic, adv., here. [hic].*

*hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, spend the winter, winter. [hiems].*

*hiems, hiemis, f., winter.*

*Hispanī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Spaniards.*

*Hispania, -ae, f., Spain.*

*homō, hominis, m. and f., human being, man.*

honor, honōris, m., *honor*.  
 hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.  
 hospitium, -i, n., *hospitality*.  
 hostis, hostis, m., *enemy*.  
 hūc, adv., *to this place, hither*. [hic].  
 humilis, humile, 475, *low, humble*.

## I

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw*.  
 iam, adv., *already*; nōn iam, *no longer*.  
 ibi, adv., *in that place, there*.  
 idem, eadem, idem, 483, *the same*.  
 [is].  
 idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable*.  
 ignis, ignis, m., 388 (note), *fire*.  
 ille, illa, illud, 483, *that*.  
 immortālis, immortāle, *immortal*.  
 impedimentum, -i, n., *hindrance*; pl., *baggage*. [impediō].  
 impediō, impedire, impedivī, impedītum, *check, impede*. [in + pēs].  
 imperātor, imperātōris, m., *general*.  
 [imperō].  
 imperium, -i, *power, rule*. [imperō].  
 imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat., *command, rule*.  
 impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum, *obtain* (a request).  
 impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*; impetum facere in, *charge upon*.  
 in, prep. with acc., *into*; with abl., *in, on*.  
 incendō, incendere, incendi, incensum, *fire, burn*.  
 incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum, *urge on, rouse*.  
 incolō, incolere, incolui, *inhabit, dwell*.

incommodum, -i, n., *misfortune*.  
 inde, adv., *from there*.  
 indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum, *lead into, draw*. [in + dūcō].  
 inferior, inferius, comp., *lower*.  
 inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum, 497, with dat., *bring upon, inflict upon*; bellum inferre, *make war upon*. [in + ferō].  
 influō, influere, inlūxī, inlūxum, *flow into, empty into*.  
 ingēns, ingentis, *enormous, great*.  
 inīquus, -a, -um, *unfair, unfavorable*. [aequus].  
 iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injury*. [iūs].  
 inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*.  
 inquit, used in quoting, *said he*.  
 insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush, treachery*.  
 insigne, insignis, n., *decoration*; pl., *insignia*.  
 instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instructum, *draw up*.  
 insula, -ae, f., *island*.  
 integer, integra, integrum, *unworn, fresh*.  
 intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellectum, *understand*.  
 inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*; inter sē, *among themselves, one another*.  
 intereā, adv., *meanwhile*. [inter + is].  
 interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum, *put to death, kill*. [inter + faciō].  
 interim, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile*. [inter].

intermittō, intermittere, intermisī,  
intermissum, *interrupt*; pass.,  
*intervene*. [inter + mittō].  
intervallum, -i, n., *interval*.  
intrā, prep. with acc., *within*.  
[inter].  
inveniō, invenīre, invēni, inventum,  
*find*. [in + veniō].  
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, unpopularity*.  
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484, *self; myself,*  
*yourself, himself, herself, itself,*  
etc.; *very*.  
is, ea, id, 483, *this, that; he, she, it*.  
iste, ista, istud, 483, *that of yours,*  
*that*.  
ita, adv., *in this way, thus, so*. [is].  
Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*.  
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore*.  
[ita + -que].  
item, adv., *likewise*.  
iter, itineris, n., *march; route; iter*  
*facere, march*. [eō].  
iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.  
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum, *order*.  
iugum, -i, n., *ridge*.  
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove*.  
iūrandum, see iūs.  
iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights; iūs*  
*iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, oath*.  
iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice, uprightness*.  
iuvenis, iuvenis, 313 (note), 311,  
*young*.

## K

Karthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., *the*  
*Carthaginians*.  
Karthāgō, Karthāginis, f., *Carthage,*  
*a city of Africa; Karthāgō Nova,*  
*New Carthage*.

## L

L., the abbreviation for Lūcius.  
labor, labōris, m., *labor, exertion*.  
laccessō, laccessere, laccessivī, laccessi-  
tum, *harass*.  
lātē, adv., *widely*. [lātus].  
Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Latins*.  
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*.  
latus, lateris, n., *side, flank*.  
Lāvinium, -ī, n., *Lavinium*.  
lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f., *embassy*.  
lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador; lieu-*  
*tenant*.  
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion, a division*  
*of the Roman army*.  
Lemannus, -ī, m., (*Lake Geneva*).  
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.  
liber, libera, liberum, *free*.  
liberē, adv., *freely*. [liber].  
liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātum,  
*set free, free*. [liber].  
licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, 397  
(note), *it is permitted*.  
Lingonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Lingones*.  
litterae, -ārum, f. pl., *despatch, letter*.  
locus, -ī, m., 86 (note), *place, posi-*  
*tion*.  
longē, adv., *far, by far*. [longus].  
longus, -a, -um, *long*.  
lupa, -ae, f., *wolf*.  
lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

## M

M., the abbreviation for Mārcus.  
magis, adv., *more*. [magnus].  
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy;*  
*magistrate*.  
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., *great-*  
*ness, size*. [magnus].

magnus, -a, -um, 476, *large, great*.  
 Māgō, Māgōnis, m., *Mago*.  
 māiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *ancestors*.  
 male, adv., 318, *badly, unsuccessfully*. [malus].  
 mālō, mālle, mālui, 496, *wish rather, prefer*. [magis + volō].  
 malus, -a, -um, 476, *bad*.  
 mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *intrust*. [manus + dō].  
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, *stay, remain*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band, body*.  
 mare, maris, n., *sea*.  
 mātīmōnium, -ī, n., *marriage*.  
 Mātrona, -ae, m., *the Matrona, now called Marne*.  
 maximē, adv., *most, especially*.  
 medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of*.  
 memoria, -ae, f., *memory*.  
 mercātor, mercātoris, m., *trader*.  
 mereō, merēre, merui, meritum, *deserve*.  
 meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*.  
 miles, militis, m., *soldier*.  
 militāris, militāre, *military; rēs militāris, art of war*. [miles].  
 mille, 480, 338, *thousand; milia passuum, miles*.  
 minimē, adv., *least, very little*.  
 minus, adv., *less*.  
 miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, miserable*.  
 Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates*.  
 Mithridāticus, -a, -um, *with Mithridates, Mithridatic*.  
 mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send*.  
 moneō, monēre, monui, monitum, *advise, warn*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.  
 morior, mori, mortuus sum, *die*.  
 mors, mortis, f., *death*. [morior].  
 mōs, mōris, m., *custom*.  
 moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *move*.  
 mulier, mulieris, f., *woman*.  
 multitudō, multitudinis, f., *great number, number*. [multus].  
 multum, adv., 318, *much*. [multus].  
 multus, -a, -um, 311, 312, *much; pl., many; multō, by much, much*.  
 mūniō, mūnire, mūnivī, mūnitum, *fortify*.  
 mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., *fortification, defenses*. [mūniō].  
 mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift; task, duty*.  
 mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*.  
 mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum, *change*.

## N

nam, conj., *for*.  
 nātiō, nātiōnis, f., *people, nation*.  
 nātū, 311 (note).  
 nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, character*.  
 nātus, -a, -um, *born, old* (in exact statements of age).  
 nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*. [nāvis].  
 nāvis, nāvis, f., 185 (note), *ship, vessel; nāvem solvere, set sail*.  
 -ne, used to denote a question; in indirect questions, *whether*.  
 nē, conj., *that not, lest*.  
 nec, see neque.  
 neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum, *disregard, neglect*.  
 nēmō, dat. nēmīni, acc. nēmīnem, 237 (note), m. and f., *no one*.  
 neque or nec, conj., *and not, nor*.

nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitum, *not know*. [sciō].

neuter, neutra, neutrum, 288, *neither*.

nihil, indeclinable, n., *nothing*.

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nōbilis, nōbile, *well-known; of noble birth, noble*.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat., *do harm to, injure*.

noctū, adv., *at night, by night*. [nox].

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 496, *be unwilling, not wish*. [volō].

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name*.

nōn, adv., *not; nōn iam, no longer; nōn nullī, some, several*.

nōndum, adv., *not yet*. [nōn + dum].

nōnne, adv., used to introduce a question to which an affirmative answer is expected, *not?* [nōn + -ne].

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours*.

novem, indeclinable, *nine*.

novus, -a, -um, *new; novissimus, -a, -um, last; novissimum agmen, rear*.

nox, noctis, f., *night*.

nūllus, -a, -um, 288, *no, none; nōn nullī, some, several*.

num, adv., used to introduce a question to which a negative answer is expected.

numerus, -i, m., *number*.

Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Numidians*.

Numidia, -ae, f., *Numidia, a country of Africa*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, *announce, report*. [nūntius].

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger; news*. nūper, adv., *recently*.

## O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for*.

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentum, *hold, possess*. [teneō].

occidō, occidere, occidi, occisum, *kill*.

occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, *seize*.

occurrō, occurrere, occurrī or occurri, occursum, with dat., *run against, meet*.

octō, indeclinable, *eight*.

octōgintā, indeclinable, *eighty*. [octō].

odium, -ī, n., *hatred*.

omniō, adv., *in all, at all*. [omnis].

omnis, omne, *all*.

opera, -ae, f., *effort, services*. [opus].

opiniō, opiniōnis, f., *opinion; reputation*.

oppidum, -i, n., *town*.

opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum, *overwhelm, crush*. [premō].

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f., *attack, siege*. [oppugnō].

oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum, *attack, besiege*. [pugnō].

ops, opis, f., *aid; pl., resources*.

opus, operis, n., *work*.

Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *Orgetorix*.

## P

P., the abbreviation for Pūblius.

pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātum, *pacify, subdue*. [pāx].

Padus, -ī m., *the Po*, a river of Italy.

paene, adv., *almost*.

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, division*.

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

parātus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready*. [parō].

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum, *prepare*.

pars, partis, f., *part; direction, side*.

parvus, -a, -um, 476, *small, little*.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (two steps, about 5 feet in our measure); *milia passuum, miles*.

pater, patris, m., 459, *father*; pl., *senators*.

patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, allow*.

patria, -ae, f., *fatherland, country*. [pater].

paucī, -ae, -a, pl., *a few*.

pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*.

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry*. [pēs].

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive back, rout*.

per, prep. with acc., *through*.

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, *finish, complete*. [per + faciō].

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.

permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtum, *influence; disturb, alarm*. [per + moveō].

perpetuus, -a, -um, *unbroken, continual*.

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, with dat., *persuade*.

perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum, *frighten*; perterritus, *panic-stricken*. [per + terreō].

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *extend*. [per + teneō].

perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum, *throw into confusion*.

pervenīō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventum, *arrive, come*. [per + venīō].

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*; pedem referre *fall back, retreat*.

petō, petere, petivī or petiī, petitum *seek, beg*.

pilum, -ī, n., *javelin*.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people the plebeians*.

Poenī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Carthaginians*.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place, pitch* (a camp).

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

Pontus, -ī, m., *Pontus*, a country of Asia Minor.

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation*.

porta, -ae, f., *gate* (of a city).

possum, posse, potuī, 494, *be able, can*. [sum].

post, adv., *after, afterward*; prep. with acc., *after; behind*.

posteā, adv., *afterward*. [post + is].

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next*. [post].

- postquam, conj., *after*. [post + quam].
- postridiē, adv., *the next day*. [posterus + diēs].
- postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum, *demand*.
- potēns, potentis, *powerful*. [possum].
- potestās, potestātis, f., *power*.
- potior, potiri, potitus sum, with abl., *get possession of, get*.
- praecipō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeeptum, with dat., *give directions, instruct*. [capiō].
- praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder*.
- praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātum, *declare; boast*.
- praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, with dat., *put in command of*. [faciō].
- praemittō, praemittere, praemisi, praemissum, *send forward, send ahead*. [mittō].
- praemium, -i, n., *reward*.
- praesertim, adv., *especially*.
- praesidium, -i, n., *guard, garrison*.
- praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitum or praestātum, with dat., *stand before, surpass*.
- praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides*.
- praetereā, adv., *besides*. [praeter + is].
- praetor, praetōris, m., *praetor, a Roman magistrate*.
- premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press, press hard, overwhelm*.
- primō, adv., *at first*. [primus].
- primum, adv., *first*. [primus].
- primus, -a, -um, *first*.
- princeps, principis, m., *leading man, head*. [primus + capiō].
- principātus, -ūs, m., *leadership*. [princeps].
- prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, old-time*.
- prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before; in place of, for; in proportion to, considering*.
- probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum, *approve*.
- proelium, -i, n., *battle, engagement*.
- profectiō, profectiōnis, f., *departure*. [proficiscor].
- proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, *set out, start*.
- prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, *advance*.
- prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum, *keep, prevent*. [prō + habeō].
- prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectum, *throw down, fling away*. [prō + iaciō].
- prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost*; prep. with acc., *near*.
- properō, properāre, properāvī, properātum, *hasten*.
- propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*. [prope].
- propior, propius, comp., with dat., *nearer*. [prope].
- propter, prep. with acc., *on account of*. [prope].
- proptereā, adv., *on that account*; proptereā quod, *for the reason that, because*. [propter + is].
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, 495, with dat., *benefit*. [prō + sum].

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.  
 proximus, -a, -um, with dat., *nearest, next*. [prope].  
 prūdēns, prūdētis, *wise*.  
 Prūsias, Prūsiae, m., *Prusias*, king of Bithynia in Asia Minor.  
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *of the state, public*; rēs pūblica, *public interest, commonwealth, republic*.  
 puer, puerī, m., *boy*; pl., *children*.  
 pugna, -ae, f., *battle, fight*. [pugnō].  
 pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātum, *fight*.  
 Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthaginian*.  
 putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum, *think*.  
 Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, with montēs, *the Pyrenees Mountains, between Gaul and Spain*.

## Q

Q., the abbreviation for Quīntus.  
 quadrāgintā, indeclinable, *forty*. [quattuor].  
 quadringentī, -ae, -a, pl., *four hundred*. [quattuor + centum].  
 quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesitum, *ask, inquire*.  
 quam, adv., *than*; with superlative, *as . . . as possible*.  
 quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*. [quattuor].  
 quattuor, indeclinable, *four*.  
 -que, enclitic, *and*.  
 quī, quae, quod, 485, *who, which, that*.  
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), 487, *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing*.

quidem, adv., *indeed*.  
 quīngentī, -ae, -a, pl., *five hundred*. [quīnque + centum].  
 quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, *fiftieth*.  
 quīnque, indeclinable, *five*.  
 quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog., 486, *who? which? what?*  
 quis (quī), quae or qua, quid (quod), indef., 487, *any, any one, anything*.  
 quisquam, quicquam, 487, *any one, anything*.  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), 487, *each, each one, each thing*.  
 quō, conj., *in order that, so that, that*. [quī].  
 quod, conj., *because*.  
 quondam, adv., *once upon a time, formerly, once*.  
 quoque, adv., *also*.

## R

recēns, recentis, *recent*.  
 recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptum, *take back, receive*; sē recipere, *betake oneself, retreat*. [capiō].  
 reddō, reddere, reddidi, redditum, *give back, restore*. [dō].  
 redigō, redigere, redēgi, redāctum, *reduce, bring*. [agō].  
 redūcō, redūcere, redūxi, reductum, *lead back, bring back*. [dūcō].  
 referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, 497, *bring back*; pedem referre, *fall back, retreat*. [ferō].  
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātum, *reign*. [rēgnum].  
 rēgnum, -ī, n., *reign, throne*. [rēx].  
 regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, *guide, direct*.

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relic-  
tum, *leave, abandon.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *the remaining, the  
rest of.* [relinquō].

remittō, remittere, remisī, remissum,  
*send back, return.* [mittō].

removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum,  
*move back, remove.* [moveō].

renovō, renovāre, renovāvī, renovā-  
tum, *renew.*

renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, re-  
nūntiātum, *report.* [nūntiō].

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum,  
*drive back, repulse.* [pellō].

repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertum,  
*find.*

rēs, -eī, f., *thing, affair, matter; quā  
rē, on account of which thing, why,  
wherefore, therefore; rēs frūmen-  
tāria, supply of grain; rēs gestae,  
deeds, achievements; rēs militāris,  
art of war; rēs pūblica, public  
interest, commonwealth, republic;  
secundae rēs, prosperity.*

resistō, resistere, restitī, with dat.,  
*resist.*

respondeō, respondēre, respondi, re-  
spōnsum, *reply, answer.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, answer.*  
[respondeō].

restituō, restituere, restitūī, restitū-  
tum, *restore.* [statuō].

retineō, retinēre, retinūī, retentum,  
*retain.* [teneō].

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum,  
388 (note), *turn back, return.*  
[vertō].

revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocā-

tum, *call back, recall.* [vocō].

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.* [regō].

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine, a river  
between Gaul and Germany.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone, a river  
of Gaul.*

Rhodiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Rhodians,  
the people of Rhodes, an island  
near the coast of Asia Minor.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river).*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman; Rōmānī,  
-ōrum, m. pl., the Romans.*

rūrsus, adv., *again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country, opposed  
to the city.*

## S

Sabinī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines.*

sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum.*

salūs, salūtis, f., *safety.*

satis, indeclinable noun and adv.,  
*enough, sufficiently.*

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.* [sciō].

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m., *Scipio.*

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum,  
*write.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

secundus, -a, -um, *second; favorable;  
secundae rēs, prosperity.* [sequor].

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, indeclinable, *sixteen.* [sex  
+ decem].

sēditō, sēditōnis, f., *sedition, in-  
surrection.* [eō].

**semper**, adv., *always*.

**Sēna**, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town.

**senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate*. [senex].

**senex**, *senis*, 313 (note), 311, *old*.

**sententia**, -ae, f., *opinion, view*.

**septem**, indeclinable, *seven*.

**septimus**, -a, -um, *seventh*. [septem].

**Sēquana**, -ae, f., *the Sequana*, now called *Seine*.

**Sēquanus**, -ī, m., *a Sequanian, the Sequanian*; pl., *the Sequani, the Sequanians*.

**sequor**, *sequi*, **secūtus sum**, *follow*.

**servitūs**, *servitūtis*, f., *slavery*. [servus].

**servō**, *servāre*, **servāvī**, *servātum*, *save, preserve*.

**servus**, -ī, m., *slave*.

**sex**, indeclinable, *six*.

**sī**, conj., *if*.

**sīc**, adv., *in this way, so, thus*.

**Sicilia**, -ae, f., *Sicily*, an island south of Italy.

**signum**, -ī, n., *signal; standard (military)*.

**silva**, -ae, f., *wood, forest*.

**similis**, *simile*, 475, with dat., *like*.

**simul**, adv., *at the same time*. [similis].

**sine**, prep. with abl., *without*.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, pl., *one by one, singly*.

**sinister**, *sinistra*, **sinistrum**, *left*: *sinistra*, -ae, f., *left hand*.

**societās**, *societātis*, f., *alliance*. [socius].

**socius**, -ī, m., *ally*. [sequor].

**soleō**, *solēre*, **solitus sum**, 382, *be accustomed*.

**sōlum**, adv., *only*; *nōn sōlum . . .*

*sed etiam, not only . . . but even, not only . . . but also*. [sōlus].

**sōlus**, -a, -um, 288, *alone*.

**solvō**, *solvere*, **solvī**, *solūtum*, *loose*; *nāvem solvere, set sail*.

**spērō**, *spērāre*, **spērāvī**, *spērātum*, *hope*. [spēs].

**spēs**, -eī, f., *hope*.

**statim**, adv., *immediately, at once, instantly*.

**statuō**, *statuere*, **statuī**, *statūtum*, *decide, determine*.

**studeō**, *studēre*, **studuī**, with dat., *be eager for, be devoted to*.

**sub**, prep. with acc. and abl., *under*.

**subitō**, adv., *suddenly*.

**subsidiūm**, -ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement, assistance*.

**succēdō**, *succēdere*, **successī**, *succesum*, with dat., *take the place of, succeed*.

**suī**, 482, *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them*.

**sum**, *esse*, **fui**, *futūrus*, 493, *be*.

**summus**, -a, -um, *highest, utmost, the top of*.

**sūmō**, *sūmere*, **sūmpsi**, *sūmptum*, *take, assume*; *supplicium sūmere, exact a penalty, inflict punishment*.

**superior**, *superius*, comp., *higher; former*.

**superō**, *superāre*, **superāvī**, *superātum*, *excel; conquer*.

**supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment, penalty*.

**suscipiō**, *suscipere*, **suscēpi**, *susceptum*, *undertake*. [sub + capiō].

**suspiciō**, *suspiciōnis*, f., *suspicion*.

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentum, *sustain*. [sub + teneō].  
 suus, -a, -um, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)*. [sui].  
 Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse*, a city of Sicily.  
 Syria, -ae, f., *Syria*, a country of Asia.

## T

T., the abbreviation for **Titus**.  
 tam, adv., *so*, modifying adjectives and adverbs.  
 tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless*.  
 tandem, adv., *at last, finally*.  
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much*. [tam].  
 Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*; pl., *the Tarquins*.  
 tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, weapon*.  
 temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum, *try, tempt*.  
 tempus, temporis, n., *time*.  
 teneō, tenēre, tenui, *hold, keep*.  
 tergum, -ī, n., *back*; terga *vertere*, *flee*.  
 terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*.  
 terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum, *frighten, terrify*.  
 tertius, -a, -um, *third*. [trēs].  
 Teutonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Teutones*.  
 Ti., the abbreviation for **Tiberius**.  
 Ticīnus, -ī, m., *the Ticinus*, a river.  
 Tigurīnus, -ī, m., *Tigurinus*.  
 timeō, timēre, timui, *fear, be anxious*.  
 timor, timōris, m., *fear*. [timeō].  
 tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise; remove*.  
 tōtus, -a, -um, 288, *whole, entire*.

trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditum, *hand over, surrender*. [trāns + dō].  
 trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum, *lead across, bring over*. [trāns + dūcō].  
 trāns, prep. with acc., *across*.  
 trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitum, 498, *go across, cross*. [trāns + eō].  
 Trasumennus, -ī, m., (*Lake*) *Trasimene*, in Etruria.  
 Trebia, -ae, m., *the Trebia*, a river.  
 trecentī, -ae, -a, pl., *three hundred*. [trēs + centum].  
 tredecim, indeclinable, *thirteen*. [trēs + decem].  
 trēs, tria, pl., 480, *three*.  
 tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune*, a Roman magistrate.  
 trīduum, -ī, n., *three days*. [trēs + diēs].  
 trīgintā, indeclinable, *thirty*. [trēs].  
 Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a city of Asia Minor.  
 Trōiāni, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Trojans*, the people of Troy.  
 tū, tui, 481, *you*.  
 Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tulingi*.  
 tum, adv., *at that time, then*.  
 tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours*. [tū].

## U

ubi, adv., *where*; conj., *when*.  
 ūllus, -a, -um, 288, *any*.  
 ultimus, -a, -um, *furthermost, extreme*.  
 ūnā, adv., *together, in company* [ūnus].

unde, adv., *whence*.

ūndēviginti, indeclinable, *nineteen*.

[ūnus + dē + viginti].

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *all together, in a body*. [ūnus + vertō].

ūnus, -a, -um, 465, *one, only*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

ūsque, adv., *up, even; usque ad, up to, even to*.

ut, conj., *as; in order that, so that, that*.

uter, utra, utrum, 465, *which? (of two)*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, 288, *each (of two), both*. [uter + -que].

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, with abl., *use*.

uxor, uxōris, f., *wife*.

## V

vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum, *be vacant*.

vadum, -i, n., *ford*.

vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, *roam*.

vāllum, -i, n., *rampart, wall*.

vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, *ravage*.

Vēii, -ōrum, m. pl., *Vēii*, a city of Etruria.

venēnum, -i, n., *poison*.

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn; terga vertere, flee*.

vescor, vescī, with abl., *eat*.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours*.

vetus, veteris, 469, *old (not new)*.

via, -ae, f., *road, way*.

victor, victōris, m., *victor*. [vincō].

victōria, -ae, f., *victory*. [victor].

vicus, -i, m., *village*.

videō, vidēre, vidī, visum, *see*; pass., *seem*.

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch*, a fourth part of the night.

viginti, indeclinable, *twenty*.

vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, *defeat*.

vir, virī, m., 458, *man*.

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *bravery, valor*. [vir].

vis, vis, f., 463, *force, violence*; pl., *strength*.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

vitō, vitāre, vitāvī, vitātum, *avoid*.

vīvus, -a, -um, *alive*.

vix, adv., *hardly*.

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum, *call*.

volō, velle, volui, 496, *be willing, wish*.

voluntās, voluntātis, f., *wish, disposition*. [volō].

vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum, *wound*. [vulnus].

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound*.

## Z

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama*, a town of Africa.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to the sections in which the inflection of the words is shown, but no reference is given where the inflection is regular.

### A

- abandon*, relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictum.  
*able*: *be able*, possum, posse, potui, 494.  
*about*, de, prep. with abl.; circum, prep. with acc.; circiter, adv.; *about to*, fut. act. part.; *bring about*, efficiō, efficere, effeci, effectum.  
*absent*, absens, absentis, 324 (note); *be absent*, absum, abesse, a fui, a futurus, 493.  
*access*, aditus, -us, m.  
*accomplish*, efficiō, efficere, effeci, effectum.  
*account*: *on account of*, abl. of cause or reason; ob, propter, prep. with acc.  
*accustomed*: *be accustomed*, soleo, solere, solitus sum, 382; consuēvi, perf.  
*achievements*, res gestae.  
*across*, trans, prep. with acc.; *lead across*, traduco, traducere, traduxi, tractum.  
*active*, acer, acris, acre.  
*advance*, progredior, progredi, progressus sum.  
*adversary*, adversarius, -i, m.
- advise*, moneo, monere, monui, monitum.  
*affair*, res, -ei, f.  
*afflict*, adicio, adicere, adfeci, adfectum.  
*Africa*, Africa, -ae, f.  
*after*, post, adv., and prep. with acc.; postquam, conj. with perf. ind.  
*afterward*, post, postea.  
*again*, iterum, rursus.  
*against*, contra, prep. with acc.  
*agger*, agger, aggeris, m.  
*aid*, auxilium, -i, n.; ops, opis, f.  
*alarm*, permoveo, permovere, permovi, permotum.  
*Alba Longa*, Alba Longa.  
*alive*, vivus, -a, -um.  
*all*, omnis, omne; *at all*, omnino; *all together*, universus, -a, -um.  
*alliance*, societas, societatis, f.  
*allow*, patior, pati, passus sum.  
*ally*, socius, -i, m.  
*almost*, ferē, prope, paene.  
*alone*, solus, -a, -um, 288.  
*Alps*, Alpēs, -ium, f. pl.  
*already*, iam.  
*also*, quoque; *not only . . . but also*, non solum . . . sed etiam.  
*altar*, ara, -ae, f.  
*although*, cum, conj. with subj.  
*always*, semper.

*ambassador*, lēgātus, -ī, m.  
*ambush*, insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*among*, apud, prep. with acc.; inter, prep. with acc.  
*ancestors*, māiōrēs, -um, m. pl.  
*and*, et, -que, atque or ac; *and not*, neque or nec.  
*animal*, animal, animālis, n.  
*announce*, nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum.  
*another*, alius, alia, aliud, 465; *one another*, inter sē.  
*answer*, respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōsum; respōsum, -ī, n.  
*anxious*: *be anxious*, timeō, timēre, timuī.  
*any*, ūllus, -a, -um, 288; *quī, quae or qua, quod*, 487; *any one*, quis, quisquam, 487; *anything*, quid, quicquam, 487.  
*approach*, appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum; *accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum*; *aditus*, -ūs, m.  
*approve*, probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum.  
*arm*, armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum.  
*arms*, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.  
*army*, exercitus, -ūs, m.  
*arrange*, dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum.  
*arrest*, comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēsum.  
*arrival*, adventus, -ūs, m.  
*arrive*, perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventum.  
*arrow*, sagitta, -ae, f.

*art of war*, rēs militāris.  
*as, cum*, conj. with subj.; *ut*, conj. with ind.  
*Ascanius*, Ascanius, -ī, m.  
*aside*: *turn aside*, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum.  
*ask*, quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum.  
*assemble*, conveniō, convenire, convenī, conventum.  
*assistance*, subsidium, -ī, n.  
*at*, ad, prep. with acc.; *locative*; *abl. of time*; *at all*, omninō; *at first*, primō; *at last*, tandem; *at night*, noctū; *at once*, statim; *at that time*, tum; *at the same time*, simul.  
*attack*, oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum; *adorior*, adoriri, adortus sum; *oppugnātiō*, oppugnātiōnis, f.; *impetus*, -ūs, m.  
*authority*, auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.  
*avoid*, vitō, vitāre, vitāvī, vitātum.  
*await*, exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum.  
*away*: *be away*, absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus, 493; *away from*, ab or ā, prep. with abl.; *carry away*, efferō, efferre, extulī, elātum, 497; *go away*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum; *send away*, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmisiī, dīmissum; *take away*, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum.

## B

*back*, tergum, -ī, n.; *give back*, reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; *send back*, remittō, remittere, remisī, remissum.

*bad*, malus, -a, -um, 476.  
*baggage*, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl.  
*bank*, ripa, -ae, f.  
*barbarian*, barbarus, -ī, m.  
*battle*, pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, -ī, n.  
*be*, sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 493.  
*bear*, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 497.  
*because*, quod, conj.; propterea quod.  
*before*, ante, prep. with acc.; antea, adv.  
*beg*, petō, petere, petivi or petii, petitum.  
*began*, have begun, coepi, perf.  
*behind*, post, prep. with acc.  
*Belgians*, Belgae, -ārum, m. pl.  
*benefit*, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, 495, with dat.  
*besides*, praeterea.  
*besiege*, oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātum.  
*between*, inter, prep. with acc.  
*boast*, praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvi, praedicātum.  
*body*, corpus, corporis, n.; (in sense of band) manus, -ūs, f.  
*bold*, audāx, audācis.  
*booty*, praeda, -ae, f.  
*both* . . . and, et . . . et.  
*boundaries*, finēs, -ium, m. pl.  
*boy*, puer, pueri, m.  
*brave*, fortis, forte.  
*bravely*, fortiter.  
*bravery*, virtūs, virtūtis, f.  
*bridge*, pōns, pontis, m.  
*bring*, dēducō, dēducere, dēdūxi, dēductum; adducō, adducere, addūxi, adductum; (in sense of reduce) redigō, redigere, redēgi,

redāctum; *bring about*, efficiō, efficere, effēci, effectum; *bring out*, ēducō, ēducere, ēdūxi, ēducum; *bring over*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxi, trāductum; *bring together*, cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, conlātum, 497; *bring up*, ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvi, ēducātum.  
*broad*, lātus, -a, -um.  
*brother*, frāter, frātris, m., 206 (note).  
*build*, aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātum.  
*building*, aedificium, -ī, n.  
*burn*, incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum.  
*but*, sed.  
*by*, ab or ā, prep. with abl.; abl. of means; dat. of agent.

## C

*Caesar*, Caesar, Caesaris, m.  
*call*, vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum; (in sense of name) appellō, appellāre, appellāvi, appellātum.  
*camp*, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.  
*can*, possum, posse, potui, 494; *cannot*, nōn possum.  
*captivē*, captiva, -ae, f.; captivus, -ī, m.  
*capture*, expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvi, expugnātum; capiō, capere, cēpi, captum.  
*care*, cūra, -ae, f.  
*carnage*, caedēs, caedis, f.  
*carry*, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 497; *carry away*, efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, 497; *carry on*, gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum.

*catch sight of*, cōspicor, cōspicārī, cōspicātus sum.

*cause*, causa, -ae, f.

*cavalry*, equitēs, -um, m. pl.; equitātus, -ūs, m.

*cease*, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitum.

*centurion*, centuriō, centuriōnis, m.

*certain*, certus, -a, -um; *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing*, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), 487.

*change*, mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum.

*character*, nātūra, -ae, f.

*check*, impediō, impedire, impedivī, impeditum.

*children*, pueri, -ōrum, m. pl.

*choose*, dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgi, dēlēctum.

*citizen*, cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., 192 (note).

*city*, urbs, urbis, f.

*civil*, cīvilis, cīvile.

*climb*, ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum.

*close*, claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum; *in close order*, cōnfertus, -a, -um.

*colleague*, collēga, -ae, m.

*collect*, cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, cōactum.

*column*, agmen, agminis, n.

*come*, veniō, venire, vēni, ventum; *pervenio*, pervenire, pervēni, perventum; *come off*, discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum; *come to*, accēdō, accēdere, accessi, accessum; *come together*, conveniō, venire, convēni, conventum.

*command*, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat.; *put in command of*, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēci, praefectum, with dat.

*commander*, dux, ducis, m.

*common people*, plēbs, plēbis, f.

*company*: *in company*, ūnā.

*complete*, efficiō, efficere, effēci, effectum; *perficio*, perficere, perfēci, perfectum.

*conceal*, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum.

*concerning*, dē, prep. with abl.

*conference*, conloquium, -ī, n.

*conquer*, superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum.

*considering*, prō, prep. with abl.

*consul*, cōsul, cōsulis, m.

*consume*, cōsumō, cōsumere, cōsumpsi, cōsumptum.

*contend*, contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum.

*Cornelius*, Cornēlius, -ī, m.

*country*, patria, -ae, f.; *the country*, rūs, rūris, n.

*courage*, animus, -ī, m.

*cross*, trāseō, trānsire, trānsii, trānsitum, 498.

*crush*, opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum.

*custom*, mōs, mōris, m.

## D

*daily*, cottidiē.

*danger*, periculum, -ī, n.

*dare*, audeō, audere, ausus sum, 382.

*daring*, audāx, audācis.

*daughter*, filia, -ae, f.

*day*, diēs, -ēi, m.  
*death*, mors, mortis, f.  
*decemvirs*, decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*decide*, statuō, statuere, statui, statū-  
 tum.  
*decoration*, insigne, insignis, n.  
*deeds*, rēs gestae.  
*deep*, altus, -a, -um.  
*defeat*, vincō, vincere, vici, victum.  
*defend*, dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi,  
 dēfensum.  
*defenses*, mūnitio, mūnitiois, f.  
*defile*, angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*definite*, certus, -a, -um.  
*demand*, postulō, postulāre, postu-  
 lāvi, postulātum.  
*departure*, profectio, profectiois, f.  
*desert*, dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dē-  
 sertum.  
*deserve*, mereō, merēre, merui, meri-  
 tum.  
*desire*, cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum ;  
 cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.  
*despair*, dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspē-  
 rāvi, dēspērātum.  
*despatch*, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*destroy*, dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum.  
*determine*, statuō, statuere, statui,  
 statūtum ; cōstituō, cōstituere,  
 cōstitui, cōstitūtum.  
*dictator*, dictātor, dictātōris, m.  
*die*, morior, mori, mortuus sum.  
*difficult*, difficilis, difficile, 475.  
*diligence*, diligentia, -ae, f.  
*direct*, regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum.  
*direction*, pars, partis, f.  
*disaster*, calamitās, calamitātis, f.  
*discretion*, cōsiliū, -i, n.  
*disposition*, voluntās, voluntātis, f.

*disregard*, neglegō, neglegere, neg-  
 lēxi, neglēctum.  
*distribute*, dispōnō, dispōnere, dis-  
 posui, dispositum.  
*district*, pāgus, -i, m.  
*ditch*, fossa, -ae, f.  
*divide*, dividō, dividere, divisī, di-  
 visum.  
*divine*, dīvinus, -a, -um.  
*do*, faciō, facere, feci, factum ; *be*  
*done*, fiō, fieri, factus sum, 499.  
*draw*, indūcō, indūcere, indūxi, in-  
 ductum ; *draw up*, instruō, in-  
 struere, instrūxi, instrūctum.  
*drive*: *drive back*, pellō, pellere,  
 pepulī, pulsum ; *repellō*, repellere,  
 reppulī, repulsum ; *drive out*, ex-  
 pellō, expellere, expulī, expul-  
 sum.  
*duty*, mūnus, mūneris, n.

## E

*each* (of two), uterque, utraque,  
 utrumque, 288 ; *each, each one,*  
*each thing*, quisque, quaeque, quid-  
 que (quodque), 487.  
*eager* : *be eager for*, studeō, studēre,  
 studui, with dat.  
*easily*, facile.  
*easy*, facilis, facile, 475.  
*eat*, vescor, vesci, with abl.  
*effectively*, commodē.  
*Egeria*, Egeria, -ae, f.  
*eight*, octō.  
*eighth*, octāvus, -a, -um.  
*either . . . or, aut . . . aut.*  
*elect*, creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum.  
*elephant*, elephantus, -i, m.  
*embassy*, lēgatiō, lēgatiōis, f.

*empty into*, influō, influere, inflūxi, inflūxum.

*encamp*, cōnsidō, cōnsidere, cōnsēdi, cōnsessum.

*end*, finis, finis, m.

*enemy*, hostis, hostis, m.

*engagement*, proelium, -ī, n.

*enjoy*, fruor, frui, frūctus sum, with abl.

*enormous*, ingēns, ingentis.

*enough*, satis.

*entire*, tōtus, -a, -um, 288.

*envy*, invidia, -ae, f.

*escape*, effugiō, effugere, effūgī.

*especially*, maximē, praesertim.

*even*, etiam, ūsque; *even to*, ūsque ad.

*everything*, omnia.

*excel*, superō, superāre, superāvi, superātum.

*except*, praeter, prep. with acc.; nisi, conj.

*exertion*, labor, labōris, m.

*exhaust*, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.

*expel*, expellō, expellere, expuli, expulsum.

*extend*, pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui.

## F

*fair*, aequus, -a, -um.

*fame*, fāma, -ae, f.

*famous*, clārus, -a, -um.

*far*, longē.

*father*, pater, patris, m., 459.

*fatherland*, patria, -ae, f.

*favor*, grātia, -ae, f.

*favorable*, aequus, -a, -um.

*fear*, timeō, timēre, timui; timor, timōris, m.

*fellow-citizen*, civis, civis, m. and f., 192 (note).

*few*, pauci, -ae, -a, pl.

*field*, ager, agrī, m.

*fiercely*, ācritēr.

*fifth*, quintus, -a, -um.

*fight*, pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātum.

*finally*, tandem.

*find*, reperīō, reperire, repperī, repperitum; *inveniō*, invenire, invēni, inventum; *find out*, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvi, cognitum.

*finish*, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.

*fire*, incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum; ignis, ignis, m., 388 (note).

*first*, primus, -a, -um; *primum*, adv.; *at first*, primō, adv.

*five*, quīnque.

*fix*, cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutum.

*flank*, latus, lateris, n.

*flee*, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus; terga vertere.

*fleet*, classis, classis, f.

*flight*, fuga, -ae, f.

*fling away*, prōiciō, prōicere, prōlēcī, prōiectum.

*follow*, sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; *follow up*, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōnsecūtus sum.

*following*, posterus, -a, -um.

*foot*, pēs, pedis, m.

*for*, dat.; acc. of extent or duration; nam, conj.; enim, conj.

*force*, vis, vīs, f., 463; *forces*, cōpia, -ārum, f. pl.

*forced march*, magnum iter.  
*ford*, vadum, -i, n.  
*forest*, silva, -ae, f.  
*form a plan*, cōnsilium capere.  
*former*, pristinus, -a, -um; superior, superius, comp.  
*fortification*, mūnitio, mūnitioēnis, f.  
*fortify*, mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnitum.  
*fortune*, fortūna, -ae, f.  
*forty*, quadrāgintā.  
*forward*: send forward, praemittō, praemittere, praemisi, praemisum.  
*found*, condō, condere, condidī, conditum.  
*four*, quattuor; *four hundred*, quadringenti, -ae, -a, pl.  
*free*, liber, libera, liberum; *free*, set free, liberō, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātum.  
*freely*, liberē.  
*frequent*, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.  
*frequently*, saepe.  
*fresh*, integer, integra, integrum.  
*friend*, amicus, -i, m.  
*friendly*, amicus, -a, -um.  
*friendship*, amicitia, -ae, f.  
*frighten*, terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum.  
*from*, abl. of separation; ab or ā, dē, ex or ē, prep. with abl.  
*front*: in front of, prō, prep. with abl.  
*furthermost*, ultimus, -a, -um.

## G

*garrison*, praesidium, -i, n.  
*gate*, porta, -ae, f.

*Gaul*, Gallia, -ae, f.; *the Gauls*, Galli, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*general*, imperātor, imperātoris, m.  
*get possession of*, potior, potiri, potitus sum, with abl.  
*gift*, mūnus, mūneris, n.  
*give*, dō, dare, dedi, datum, 54 (note); *give back*, reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; *give up*, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitum.  
*glad*: be glad, gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvissus sum, 382.  
*glorious*, clārus, -a, -um.  
*go*, eō, ire, ii, itum, 498; *go away*, discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum; *go out*, ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum; *going to*, fut. act. part.  
*god*, deus, -i, m., 463.  
*goddess*, dea, -ae, f.  
*good*, bonus, -a, -um, 476.  
*grain*, frūmentum, -i, n.  
*grant*, concēdō, concēdere, concessi, concessum.  
*great*, magnus, -a, -um, 476; *ingēns*, ingentis; *great number*, multitūdō, multitudinis, f.; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um.  
*Greeks*, Graeci, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*grief*, dolor, dolōris, m.  
*guard*, praesidium, -i, n.  
*guide*, regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum.

## H

*halt*, cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti.  
*Hamilcar*, Hamilcar, Hamilcaris, m.  
*hand*, manus, -ūs, f.; *hand over*, trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditum.  
*Hannibal*, Hannibal, Hannibalis, m.

*happen*, accidō, accidere, accidī.  
*harass*, laccessō, laccessere, laccessivī, laccessitum.  
*hardly*, vix.  
*harm*: do harm to, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat.  
*hasten*, properō, properāre, properāvī, properātum; contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum.  
*hatred*, odium, -ī, n.  
*have*, habeo, habere, habuī, habitum.  
*he*, is, 483; *him* (reflexive), suī, 482.  
*head*, princeps, principis, m.  
*hear*, audiō, audire, audivī, auditum.  
*heavy*, gravis, grave.  
*height*, altitudō, altitudinis, f.  
*here*, hīc.  
*hesitate*, dubitō, dubitare, dubitāvī, dubitātum.  
*hide*, abdo, abdere, abdidī, abditum.  
*high*, altus, -a, -um; *highest*, summus, -a, -um.  
*hill*, collis, collis, m.  
*Himself* (reflexive), suī, 482; (intensive), ipse, 484.  
*his*, eius; (reflexive), suus, -a, -um.  
*hither*, hūc.  
*hold*, teneō, tenere, tenuī; obtineō, obtinere, obtinuī, obtentum; contineō, continere, continuī, contentum.  
*home*, domus, -ūs, f., 463.  
*honor*, honor, honoris, m.  
*hope*, spēs, -eī, f.; spēro, spērare, spēravī, spērātum.  
*hopeless*: be hopeless, dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum.  
*horn*, cornū, -ūs, n.  
*horse*, equus, -ī, m.

*horseman*, eques, equitis, m.  
*hospitality*, hospitium, -ī, n.  
*hostage*, obses, obsidis, m.  
*hour*, hōra, -ae, f.  
*however*, autem.  
*humble*, humilis, humile, 475.  
*hundred*: two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a, pl.; four hundred, quadringentī, -ae, -a, pl.  
*hurl*, coniciō, conicere, conicēci, coniectum.

## I

*I*, ego, meī, 481.  
*if*, si; *if not*, nisi.  
*immediately*, statim.  
*immortal*, immortalis, immortalē.  
*impede*, impediō, impedire, impedivī, impeditum.  
*important*, gravis, grave.  
*in*, in, prep. with abl.; abl. of respect; abl. of time.  
*increase*, augeō, augere, auxī, auctum.  
*indeed*, quidem.  
*infantry*, peditēs, -um, m. pl.  
*inflict*: inflict upon, inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum, 497, with dat.; *inflict punishment*, supplicium sūmere.  
*influence*, grātia, -ae, f.; auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.; permovere, permovī, permotum.  
*inform*, certiōrem facere.  
*inhabit*, incolō, incolere, incoluī.  
*injure*, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat.  
*injury*, iniūria, -ae, f.  
*inquire*, quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum.

*insignia*, insignia, -ium, n. pl.  
*instantly*, statim.  
*instruct*, praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptum, with dat.  
*insurrection*, sēditio, sēditionis, f.  
*intend*, cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum; *intending to*, fut. act. part.  
*interrupt*, intermittō, intermittere, intermisī, intermissum.  
*interval*, intervāllum, -ī, n.  
*into*, in, prep. with acc.  
*intrust*, mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum.  
*island*, insula, -ae, f.  
*it*, is, ea, id, 483.  
*Italy*, Italia, -ae, f.  
*its*, eius; (reflexive), suus, -a, -um.

## J

*javelin*, pilum, -ī, n.  
*join*, coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum; *join battle*, proelium committere.  
*Jove*, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.  
*Jupiter*, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.  
*justice*, iūstitia, -ae, f.

## K

*keep*, cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum; *teneō*, tenēre, tenuī.  
*kill*, occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum; *interficiō*, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum.  
*kind*, genus, generis, n.  
*kindness*, beneficium, -ī, n.  
*king*, rēx, rēgis, m.  
*know*, sciō, scire, scivī, scitum; *not*

*know*, nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitum.

*knowledge*, scientia, -ae, f.

## L

*Labienus*, Labiēnus, -ī, m.  
*labor*, labor, labōris, m.  
*lack*, careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus.  
*land*, terra, -ae, f.  
*large*, magnus, -a, -um, 476.  
*last*: *at last*, tandem.  
*Latins*, Latini, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*law*, lēx, lēgis, f.  
*lead*, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum; *lead across*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trādūctum; *lead back*, redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum; *lead into*, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum; *lead out*, ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum.  
*leader*, dux, ducis, m.  
*leadership*, principātus, -ūs, m.  
*leading man*, princeps, principis, m.  
*learn*, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum.  
*least*, minimus, -a, -um; *minimē*, adv.  
*leave*, relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum.  
*left*, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.  
*legion*, legiō, legiōnis, f.  
*less*, minor, minus, comp.; *minus*, adv.  
*lest*, nē, conj. with subj.  
*letter*, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*level*, aequus, -a, -um.  
*lieutenant*, lēgātus, -ī, m.  
*life*, vita, -ae, f.  
*light*, lūx, lūcis, f.

*like*, *similis*, *simile*, 475, with dat.  
*likewise*, item.  
*line of battle*, *aciēs*, -ēī, f.  
*little*, *parvus*, -a, -um, 476; *very little*, *minimē*, adv.  
*live*, *habitō*, *habitāre*, *habitāvī*, *habitātum*.  
*long*, *longus*, -a, -um; *long, a long time*, *diū*, 478; *no longer*, *nōn iam*.  
*look out for*, *cōnsulō*, *cōnsulere*, *cōnsulūi*, *cōnsultum*, with dat.  
*loose*, *solvō*, *solvere*, *solvī*, *solūtum*.  
*loss*, *dētrimentum*, -ī, n.  
*love*, *amō*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*.  
*lower*, *inferior*, *inferius*, comp.

## M

*magistrate*, *magistrātus*, -ūs, m.  
*make*, *creō*, *creāre*, *creāvī*, *creātum*; *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*; *be made*, *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*, 499; *make war upon*, *bellum inferre*.  
*man*, *vir*, *virī*, m., 458; *homō*, *hominis*, m. and f.  
*many*, *multi*, -ae, -a, pl., 311, 312.  
*march*, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; *iter facere*.  
*marriage*, *mātrimōnium*, -ī, n.  
*marsh*, *palūs*, *palūdis*, f.  
*matter*, *rēs*, -eī, f.  
*meanwhile*, *interim*, *intereā*.  
*meet*, *occurrō*, *occurrere*, *occurrī* or *occurri*, *occursum*, with dat.  
*memory*, *memoria*, -ae, f.  
*messenger*, *nūntius*, -ī, m.  
*middle, the middle of*, *medius*, -a, -um.  
*miles*, *mīlia passuum*.  
*military*, *militāris*, *militāre*.  
*mind*, *animus*, -ī, m.

*miserable*, *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*.  
*misfortune*, *incommodum*, -ī, n.  
*missile*, *tēlum*, -ī, n.  
*money*, *pecūnia*, -ae, f.  
*more*, comp. degree; *plūs*, *plūris*, 312; *plūs*, adv.; *magis*, adv.  
*most*, sup. degree; *plūrimus*, -a, -um; *plūrimum*, adv.; *maximē*, adv.  
*mountain*, *mōns*, *montis*, m.  
*move*, *moveō*, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*; *move away*, *dēmigrō*, *dēmigrāre*, *dēmigrāvī*, *dēmigrātum*.  
*much*, *multus*, -a, -um, 311, 312; *multum*, adv., 318; *by much*, *much*, *multō*; *so much*, *tantus*, -a, -um.  
*must*, pass. periphrastic conjugation.  
*my*, *meus*, -a, -um.  
*myself*, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 484.

## N

*name*, *nōmen*, *nōminis*, n.  
*narrow*, *angustus*, -a, -um.  
*nation*, *populus*, -ī, m.  
*nature*, *nātūra*, -ae, f.  
*near*, ad, prep. with acc.; *prope*, adv., and prep. with acc.; (*propinquus*, -a, -um) *nearer*, *propior*, *propius*, comp., with dat.; *nearest*, *proximus*, -a, -um, with dat.  
*nearly*, *prope*.  
*neglect*, *neglegō*, *neglegere*, *neglēxī*, *neglēctum*.  
*neighboring*, *propinquus*, -a, -um.  
*neighbors*, *finitimī*, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*neither*, *neuter*, *neutra*, *neutrum*, 288.  
*never*, *numquam*.

*new*, novus, -a, -um.  
*news*, nūntius, -ī, m.  
*next*, deinde, adv.; *posterus*, -a, -um; *the next day*, postridiē.  
*night*, nox, noctis, f.; *at night*, noctū.  
*nine*, novem.  
*no*, nūllus, -a, -um, 288; *no one*, nēmō, m. and f., 237 (note); *no longer*, nōn iam.  
*noble*, of noble birth, nōbilis, nōbile.  
*nor*, neque or nec.  
*not*, nōn; *and not*, neque or nec.  
*nothing*, nihil, indeclinable, n.  
*Numa*, Numa, -ae, m.  
*number*, numerus, -ī, m.; *great number*, number, multitudō, multitudinis, f.

## O

*oath*, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.  
*observe*, cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum.  
*obtain*, impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum.  
*off*. *come off*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum.  
*often*, saepe.  
*old*, senex, senis, 313 (note), 311; (not new), vetus, veteris, 469; (in exact statements of age), nātus, -a, -um; *old-time*, priſtinus, -a, -um.  
*on*, in, prep. with abl.; (in certain expressions denoting position), ab or ā, prep. with abl.; abl. of time; *on account of*, abl. of cause; *ob*, propter, prep. with acc.  
*once*, once upon a time, quondam; *at once*, statim.

*one*, ūnus, -a, -um, 465; *one . . . the other*, alter . . . alter; *one another*, inter sē; *one by one*, singulī, -ae, -a, pl.  
*only*, ūnus, -a, -um, 465; *not only . . . but also*, nōn solum . . . sed etiam.  
*open*, aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertum; *apertus*, -a, -um.  
*opinion*, sententia, -ae, f.; *opiniō*, opiniōnis, f.  
*or*, aut.  
*order*, iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum; *in order that*, ut, quō, conj. with subj.; *in close order*, cōnfertus, -a, -um.  
*other*, alius, alia, aliud, 465; *the other*, cēterī, -ae, -a, pl.; (of two), alter, altera, alterum, 465.  
*ought*, dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitum; pass. periphrastic conjugation.  
*our*, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum.  
*out*: *out of*, ex or ē, prep. with abl.; *bring out*, lead out, ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum; *find out*, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum; *go out*, ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum.  
*outermost*, extrēmus, -a, -um.  
*outlet*, exitus, -ūs, m.  
*outside of*, extrā, prep. with acc.  
*over*: *bring over*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum.  
*overtake*, cōsequor, cōsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.  
*overwhelm*, premō, premere, pressī, pressum; *oppress*, opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum.  
*own*: *his own*, *their own*, etc., suus, -a, -um.

## P

*pace*, passus, -ūs, m.  
*panic-stricken*, perterritus, -a, -um.  
*part*, pars, partis, f.  
*pass*, angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*peace*, pāx, pācis, f.  
*people*, populus, -ī, m.; nātiō, nātiōnis, f.  
*perform*, fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, with abl.  
*peril*, periculum, -ī, n.  
*permitted*: it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, 397 (note).  
*persuade*, persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsum, with dat.  
*pitch* (a camp), pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum.  
*place*, locus, -ī, m., 86 (note); pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum; conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum; in that place, ibi; in place of, prō, prep. with abl.; take the place of, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, with dat.  
*plan*, cōnsilium, -ī, n.  
*pledge*, fidēs, -eī, f.  
*plunder*, praeda, -ae, f.  
*poison*, venēnum, -ī, n.  
*Porsena*, Porsena, -ae, m.  
*position*, locus, -ī, m., 86 (note).  
*power*, imperium, -ī, n.; potestās, potestātis, f.  
*powerful*, potēns, potentis.  
*praetor*, praetor, praetōris, m.  
*prefer*, mālō, mälle, mālui, 496.  
*prepare*, parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum; comparō, comparāre, com-

parāvī, comparātum; prepared, parātus, -a, -um.  
*press*, press hard, premō, premere, pressī, pressum.  
*prevent*, prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum.  
*prison*, carcer, carceris, m.  
*prisoner*, captiva, -ae, f.; captivus, -ī, m.  
*procure*, comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum.  
*promise*, polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum.  
*prosperity*, secundae rēs.  
*protection*, fidēs, -eī, f.  
*province*, prōvincia, -ae, f.  
*punishment*, supplicium, -ī, n.  
*purpose*: for the purpose of, causā, with gen.  
*put in command of*, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, with dat.  
*Pyrrhus*, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.

## Q

*quarters*: winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl.  
*quickly*, celeriter.

## R

*race*, genus, generis, n.  
*raise*, tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum.  
*rampart*, vāllum, -ī, n.  
*rather*: wish rather, mālō, mälle, mālui, 496.  
*ravage*, vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum.  
*ready*, parātus, -a, -um.

*rear*, novissimum agmen.  
*reason*, causa, -ae, f.; *for the reason that*, propterea quod.  
*recall*, revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum.  
*receive*, accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum; recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptum.  
*recent*, recēns, recentis.  
*recently*, nūper.  
*reign*, rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātum.  
*reinforcement*, subsidium, -i, n.  
*remain*, manēō, manēre, mānsi, mānsū.  
*remaining*, reliquus, -a, -um.  
*remarkable*, ēgregius, -a, -um.  
*remove*, tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum; removēō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum.  
*renew*, renovō, renovāre, renovāvī, renovātum.  
*reply*, respōnsū, -i, n.  
*report*, fāma, -ae, f.; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum; renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātum.  
*republic*, rēs pūblica.  
*repulse*, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum.  
*reputation*, opīniō, opīniōnis, f.  
*rescue*, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptum.  
*reserve*, subsidium, -i, n.  
*resist*, resistō, resistere, restiti, with dat.  
*resources*, opēs, -um, f. pl.  
*rest*: *the rest of*, reliquus, -a, -um.  
*restore*, reddō, reddere, reddidī, red-

dītum; restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūtum.  
*result*, fiō, fieri, factus sum, 499.  
*retain*, retinēō, retinēre, retinui, retentum.  
*retreat*, sē recipere, pedem referre.  
*return*, revertor, reverti, reverti, reversum, 388 (note).  
*reward*, praemium, -i, n.  
*ridge*, iugum, -i, n.  
*right*, dexter, dextra, dextrum; *right*, rights, iūs, iūris, n.  
*river*, flūmen, flūminis, n.  
*road*, via, -ae, f.  
*roam*, vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum.  
*Roman*, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *the Romans*, Rōmānī, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*Rome*, Rōma, -ae, f.  
*Romulus*, Rōmulus, -i, m.  
*rouse*, incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum.  
*rout*, fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum; pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum.  
*route*, iter, itineris, n.  
*rule*, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat.; imperium, -i, n.

## S

*Sabines*, Sabini, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*sacrifice*, sacrificium, -i, n.  
*safety*, salūs, salūtis, f.  
*Saguntum*, Saguntum, -i, n.  
*sailor*, nauta, -ae, m.  
*same*, idem, eadem, idem, 483; *at the same time*, simul.  
*save*, servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum.  
*say*, dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum; *said he*, inquit.

*Scaevola*, *Scaevola*, -ae, m.  
*Scipio*, *Scipiō*, *Scipiōnis*, m.  
*scout*, *explōrātor*, *explōrātōris*, m.  
*sea*, *mare*, *maris*, n.  
*second*: a second time, *iterum*.  
*sedition*, *sēditio*, *sēditio**nis*, f.  
*see*, *videō*, *vidēre*, *vidi*, *visum*.  
*seek*, *petō*, *petere*, *petivi* or *petii*,  
*petitum*.  
*seem*, pass. of *videō*.  
*seize*, *occupō*, *occupāre*, *occupāvi*,  
*occupātum*; *comprehendō*, *com-*  
*prehendere*, *comprehēdi*, *compre-*  
*hēnsum*.  
*select*, *dēligō*, *dēligere*, *dēlēgi*,  
*dēlēctum*.  
*self*: *himself*, *themselves*, etc. (re-  
flexive), *suī*, 482; (intensive),  
*ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 484.  
*senate*, *senātus*, -ūs, m.  
*senators*, *patrēs*, -um, m. pl.  
*send*, *mittō*, *mittere*, *misī*, *missum*;  
*send away*, *dimittō*, *dimittere*,  
*dīmisi*, *dīmissum*; *send back*,  
*remittō*, *remittere*, *remisī*, *re-*  
*missum*; *send forward*, *praemittō*,  
*praemittere*, *praemisi*, *praemissum*.  
*services*, *opera*, -ae, f.  
*set*: *set free*, *liberō*, *liberāre*,  
*liberāvi*, *liberātum*; *set sail*,  
*nāvem solvere*.  
*settle*, *cōnsidō*, *cōnsidere*, *cōnsēdi*,  
*cōnsessum*.  
*seven*, *septem*.  
*seventh*, *septimus*, -a, -um.  
*several*, *complūrēs*, *complūra*, pl.,  
330 (note); *nōn nulli*.  
*sharp*, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
*she*, *ea*, 483; *her* (reflexive), *suī*, 482.

*ship*, *nāvis*, *nāvis*, f., 185 (note).  
*short*, *brevis*, *breve*.  
*show*, *dēmōnstrō*, *dēmōnstrāre*, *dē-*  
*mōnstrāvi*, *dēmōnstrātum*.  
*side*, *pars*, *partis*, f.; *latus*, *lateris*,  
n.; *from all sides*, *undique*; *on*  
*this side of*, *citrā*, prep. with acc.  
*siege*, *oppugnātiō*, *oppugnātiō**nis*, f.  
*sight*, *cōnspectus*, -ūs, m.  
*signal*, *signum*, -ī, n.  
*since*, *cum*, conj. with subj.  
*six*, *sex*.  
*size*, *magnitūdō*, *magnitūd**inis*, f.  
*slave*, *servus*, -ī, m.  
*slavery*, *servitūs*, *servitūtis*, f.  
*small*, *parvus*, -a, -um, 476.  
*so*, *sic*, *ita*, (modifying adjectives  
and adverbs) *tam*; *so great*, *so*  
*much*, *tantus*, -a, -um; *so that*, *ut*,  
*quō*, conj. with subj.; *and so*,  
*itaque*.  
*soldier*, *miles*, *militis*, m.  
*some*, *nōn nulli*; *some*, *some one*,  
*something*, *aliquis* (*aliqui*), *aliqua*,  
*aliquid* (*aliquod*), 487; *some . . .*  
*others*, *alii . . . alii*.  
*son*, *filius*, -ī, m.  
*speak*, *dicō*, *dīcere*, *dixi*, *dictum*.  
*spend the winter*, *hiemō*, *hiemāre*,  
*hiemāvi*, *hiemātum*.  
*spur*, *calcar*, *calcāris*, n.  
*standard*, *signum*, -ī, n.  
*start*, *proficiscor*, *proficisci*, *profectus*  
*sum*.  
*state*, *civitās*, *civitātis*, f.  
*station*, *cōstituō*, *cōstituere*, *cōn-*  
*stituī*, *cōstitutum*.  
*stay*, *manēō*, *manēre*, *mānsi*,  
*mānsu**m*.

*strength*, *virēs*, -ium, f. pl.  
*strengthen*, *cōfirmō*, *cōfirmāre*,  
*cōfirmāvi*, *cōfirmātum*.  
*strong*, *firmus*, -a, -um.  
*stronghold*, *castellum*, -i, n.  
*subdue*, *pācō*, *pācāre*, *pācāvī*,  
*pācātum*.  
*succeed*, *succēdō*, *succēdere*, *successi*,  
*successum*, with dat.  
*successfully*, *bene*, 318.  
*sudden*, *repentinus*, -a, -um.  
*suddenly*, *subitō*.  
*suffer*, *accipiō*, *accipere*, *accēpī*,  
*acceptum*.  
*suitable*, *idōneus*, -a, -um.  
*superhuman*, *divīnus*, -a, -um.  
*supply of grain*, *rēs frūmentāria*.  
*surpass*, *praestō*, *praestāre*, *praestiti*,  
*praestitum* or *praestātum*, with  
 dat.  
*surrender*, *trādō*, *trādere*, *trādidī*,  
*trāditum*; *dēditio*, *dēditioŋis*, f.  
*surround*, *circumdō*, *circumdare*, *circum-*  
*dedī*, *circumdatum*, 54 (note);  
*circumveniō*, *circumvenire*, *circum-*  
*vēnī*, *circumventum*.  
*suspicion*, *suspiciō*, *suspiciōŋis*, f.  
*sustain*, *sustineō*, *sustinēre*, *sus-*  
*tinui*, *sustentum*.  
*sword*, *gladius*, -i, m.  
*Syracuse*, *Syrācūsae*, -ārum, f. pl.

## T

*take*, *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*;  
*sūmō*, *sūmere*, *sūmpsi*, *sūmptum*;  
*take away*, *ēripiō*, *ēripere*, *ēripui*,  
*ēreptum*; *take a position*, *cō-*  
*sistō*, *cōsistere*, *cōstiti*; *take by*

*assault*, *expugnō*, *expugnāre*, *ex-*  
*pugnāvī*, *expugnātum*; *take the*  
*place of*, *succēdō*, *succēdere*, *suc-*  
*cessi*, *successum*, with dat.  
*task*, *mūnus*, *mūneris*, n.  
*tell*, *dicō*, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictum*.  
*ten*, *decem*.  
*tenth*, *decimus*, -a, -um.  
*terms*, *condiciō*, *condiciōŋis*, f.  
*terrify*, *terreō*, *terrēre*, *terruī*, *terri-*  
*tum*.  
*territory*, *ager*, *agri*, m.; *finēs*, -ium,  
 m. pl.  
*than*, abl. of comparison; *quam*.  
*that* (demonstrative), *ille*, *illa*, *illud*,  
 483; *is*, *ea*, *id*, 483; *that of*  
*yours*, *that*, *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, 483;  
 (relative), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, 485;  
 indirect statement; *in order that*,  
*so that*, *that*, *ut*, *quō*, conj. with  
 subj.; *that not*, *nē*, conj. with  
 subj.; *ut nōn*; *for the reason*  
*that*, *propterea quod*.  
*their*, *eōrum*, *eārum*, *eōrum*; (reflex-  
 ive), *suus*, -a, -um.  
*themselves* (reflexive), *suī*, 482;  
 (intensive), *ipsī*, -ae, -a.  
*then*, *tum*, *deinde*.  
*there*, *ibi*; *from there*, *inde*.  
*therefore*, *itaque*, *quā rē*.  
*they*, *ii* or *eī*, *eae*, *ea*; *them* (reflex-  
 ive), *suī*, 482.  
*thing*, *rēs*, -eī, f.  
*think*, *putō*, *putāre*, *putāvī*, *putātum*;  
*arbitror*, *arbitrārī*, *arbitrātus sum*;  
*existimō*, *existimāre*, *existimāvī*,  
*existimātum*.  
*third*, *tertius*, -a, -um.  
*thirty*, *trīgintā*.

*this*, hic, haec, hoc, 483; is, ea, id, 483.

*thither*, eō.

*three*, trēs, tria, pl., 480; *three days*, triduum, -i, n.

*throne*, rēgnum, -i, n.

*through*, per, prep. with acc.

*throw*, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; *throw into confusion*, perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum.

*thus*, sic, ita.

*time*, tempus, temporis, n.; *at that time*, tum; *at the same time*, simul.

*to*, dat.; ad, prep. with acc.

*together*: *all together*, ūniversus, -a, -um; *bring together*, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, 497; *come together*, conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventum.

*town*, oppidum, -i, n.

*trader*, mercātor, mercātōris, m.

*treachery*, insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.

*treat*, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum.

*tree*, arbor, arboris, f.

*trench*, fossa, -ae, f.

*tribe*, gēns, gentis, f.

*tribune*, tribūnus, -i, m.

*Trojans*, Trōiānī, -ōrum, m. pl.

*troops*, cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.

*Troy*, Trōia, -ae, f.

*trust*, fidō, fidere, fisus sum, 382, with dat.

*trustworthiness*, fidēs, -eī, f.

*try*, temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum; cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum.

*turn*, vertō, vertere, vertī, versum; *turn about*, convertō, convertere,

convertī, conversum; *turn aside*, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum.

*twenty*, vīgintī.

*two*, duo, duae, duo, 480; *two hundred*, ducentī, -ae, -a, pl.

## U

*unbroken*, perpetuus, -a, -um.

*uncommon*, ēgregius, -a, -um.

*under*, sub, prep. with acc. and abl.

*understand*, intellegō, intellegere, intelligēxī, intelligētum.

*undertake*, suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum.

*unfair*, inīquus, -a, -um.

*unfavorable*, inīquus, -a, -um.

*unite*, coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum.

*unless*, nisi.

*unlike*, dissimilis, dissimile, 475, with dat.

*unobstructed*, expeditus, -a, -um.

*unprotected*, apertus, -a, -um.

*unwilling*: *be unwilling*, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 496.

*up*, ūsque; *up to*, ūsque ad; *draw up*, instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instructum; *follow up*, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum; *give up*, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum.

*upon*: *make war upon*, bellum inferre.

*urge*, cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum; *urge on*, incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum.

*use*, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl.

*utmost*, summus, -a, -um.

## V

*vacant*: *be vacant*, *vacō*, *vacāre*,  
*vacāvī*, *vacātum*.  
*valor*, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f.  
*very*, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 484; sup.  
degree.  
*vessel*, *nāvis*, *nāvis*, f., 185 (note).  
*victor*, *victor*, *victōris*, m.  
*victory*, *victōria*, -ae, f.  
*village*, *vīcus*, -ī, m.  
*violence*, *vīs*, *vīs*, f., 463.

## W

*wage*, *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*.  
*wait for*, *exspectō*, *exspectāre*, *ex-*  
*spectāvī*, *exspectātum*.  
*wall*, *mūrus*, -ī, m.  
*want*, *inopia*, -ae, f.  
*war*, *bellum*, -ī, n.  
*warn*, *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*,  
*monitum*.  
*watch*, *vigilia*, -ae, f.  
*water*, *aqua*, -ae, f.  
*way*: *in this way*, *sic*, *ita*.  
*weapon*, *tēlum*, -ī, n.  
*well*, *bene*, 318.  
*what*, *quis* (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*),  
486.  
*when*, *ubi*, conj. with perf. ind.;  
cum, conj. with past and past  
perf. subj.  
*where*, *ubi*.  
*whether*, -ne.  
*which* (rel.), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, 485;  
(interrog.), *quis* (*quī*), *quae*, *quid*  
(*quod*), 486; (of two), *uter*, *utra*,  
*utrum*, 465.

*while*, *dum*, conj. with pres. ind.  
*who* (rel.), *quī*, *quae*, 485; (in-  
terrog.), *quis*, 486.  
*whole*, *tōtus*, -a, -um, 288.  
*why*, *quā rē*.  
*wide*, *lātus*, -a, -um.  
*widely*, *lātē*.  
*wife*, *uxor*, *uxōris*, f.  
*willing*: *be willing*, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*,  
496.  
*win over*, *conciliō*, *conciliāre*, *con-*  
*ciliāvī*, *conciliātum*.  
*wing*, *cornū*, -ūs, n.  
*winter*, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.; *winter*  
*quarters*, *hiberna*, -ōrum, n. pl.  
*wise*, *prūdēns*, *prūdentis*.  
*wish*, *cupiō*, *cupere*, *cupivī*, *cupitum*;  
*volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, 496; *voluntās*,  
*voluntātis*, f.; *wish rather*, *mālō*,  
*mälle*, *mālui*, 496.  
*with*, abl. of means; abl. of manner;  
cum, prep. with abl.  
*withdraw*, *excēdō*, *excēdere*, *excessī*,  
*excessum*.  
*within*, abl. of time; *intrā*, prep.  
with acc.  
*without*, *sine*, prep. with abl.; *be*  
*without*, *careō*, *carēre*, *caruī*,  
*caritūrus*.  
*wolf*, *lupa*, -ae, f.  
*woman*, *fēmina*, -ae, f.; *mulier*,  
*mulieris*, f.  
*wood*, *silva*, -ae, f.  
*work*, *opus*, *operis*, n.  
*wound*, *vulnus*, *vulneris*, n.; *vulnerō*,  
*vulnerāre*, *vulnerāvī*, *vulnerātum*.  
*wretched*, *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*.  
*write*, *scribō*, *scribere*, *scripsī*,  
*scriptum*.

## Y

*year*, annus, -ī, m.

*yet*, tamen; *not yet*, nōndum.

*yield*, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum.

*you*, tū, tuī, 481.

*young*, iuvenis, iuvenis, 313 (note), 311; *young man*, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m.

*your*, *yours*, tuus, -a, -um; *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*; *that of yours*, iste, ista, istud, 483.

*yourself*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484.

## INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, except those with *p.* and *n.*, which refer to page and foot-note.

### Ablative :

- of separation, 133, 516.
- of agent, 41, 517.
- of means, 64, 518.
- of accompaniment, 97, 519.
- of manner, 321, 520.
- of cause or reason, 106, 521.
- of comparison, 309, 522.
- of measure of difference, 315, 523.
- descriptive, 111, 524.
- of respect, 175, 525.
- of time, 344, 526.
- with certain deponents, 385, 527.
- absolute, 394, 528.
- place where, 253, 529.
- place from which, 255, 531.

### Absolute comparative and superlative, 297.

### Accent, 8, 76, 243.

### Accompaniment, abl. of, 97, 519.

### Accusative :

- direct object, 32, 514.
- of extent or duration, 339, 515.
- place to which, 254, 530.
- in indirect statements, 368, 544.

### Adjectives :

- first and second declensions, 74, 93, 464.
- pronominal, 288, 465.
- third declension, 212-214, 466-469.
- comparison, 294, 304, 305, 311, 473-476.

### declension of comparative, 295, 471, 472.

### agreement, 80, 502.

### with dat., 89, 509.

### used as substantive, p. 61, n. 1 ; p. 75, n. 2.

### Adverbs, formation and comparison, 317, 318, 477, 478.

### Adversative cum-clauses, 402, 543.

### Agent, abl. of, 41, 517.

### dat. of, 430, 513.

### Agreement :

### verb, 16, 500.

### participle, 225.

### noun, 72, 501.

### adjective, 80, 502.

### relative pronoun, 143, 503.

### Aliquis, 353, 487.

### Alius, declension, 288, 465.

### Alphabet, 1.

### Alter, declension, 288, 465.

### Appositive noun, 72, 501.

### Cardinal numerals, see *Numerals*.

### Case-endings, 68, 158, 244 ; see also *Declension*.

### Causal cum-clauses, 402, 543.

### Cause, abl. of, 106, 521.

### Comparison, see *Adjectives* and *Adverbs*.

### abl. of, 309, 522.

### Compound verbs, 238.

### with dat., 241, 508.

- Conditional complexes, 446.  
 present and past neutral, 454, 455, 550.  
 more vivid future, 450, 455, 551.  
 less vivid future, 450, 455, 552.  
 contrary to fact, 454, 455, 553.
- Conjugation, see *Verb*.
- Cum, enclitic, p. 64, n. 1.
- Cum-clauses, of situation, 407, 542.  
 causal and adversative, 402, 543.
- Dative :  
 indirect object, 57, 506.  
 with intransitive verbs, 224, 507.  
 with compound verbs, 241, 508.  
 with adjectives, 89, 509.  
 of purpose or tendency, 301, 510.  
 double dative construction, 302, 511.  
 of possession, 421, 512.  
 of agent, 430, 513.
- Declension :  
 first, 27, 457.  
 second, 66, 75, 91, 458.  
 third, 157, 165, 166, 171, 183, 189, 459, 460; classes with gen. pl. in *ium*, 191.  
 fourth, 228, 461.  
 fifth, 234, 235, 462.  
 irregular, 463.  
 See also *Adjectives, Participles, Numerals*. For the declension of pronouns, see the particular words.
- Demonstrative pronouns, see the particular words.
- Deponent verbs, 377, 492.  
 with abl., 385, 527.
- Descriptive genitive and ablative, 111, 505, 524.
- Descriptive relative clauses, 292, 541.
- Deus*, declension, 463.
- Difference, abl. of measure of, 315, 523.
- Direct object, 32, 514.
- Domus*, declension, 463.
- Double dative construction, 302, 511.
- Dum*, pres. ind. with, 163, 532.
- Duo*, declension, 480.
- Duration, acc. of, 339, 515.
- Ego*, declension, 481.
- Enclitics, p. 8, n. 2.
- Endings, see *Case-endings, Personal endings, Verb*.
- Eō*, conjugation, 404, 498.
- Extent, acc. of, 339, 515.
- Ferō*, conjugation, 396, 497.
- Fiō*, conjugation, 418, 499.
- Future, tense-sign, 85, 100.  
 in subordinate clauses, 155.
- Future perfect, formation, 149.  
 in subordinate clauses, 155.
- Gender of nouns :  
 first declension, 67.  
 second declension, 67, 92.  
 third declension, 159.  
 fourth declension, 229.  
 fifth declension, 236.
- Genitive, descriptive, 111, 505.  
 translated with *for*, p. 54, n. 4.
- Gerund, 432.  
 use, 435.
- Gerundive, 219.  
 use, 435.  
 with *sum*, 221, 427.
- Harmony of tenses, 333, 547.  
 with historical present, p. 132, n. 1.

**Hic**, declension, 483.  
 use, 114.  
 Historical present, p. 86, n. 1.

**Idem**, declension, 129, 483.

**Ille**, declension, 483.  
 use, 114.

Imperative, personal endings, 347, 488.  
 irregular forms, 348.

Impersonal verb, p. 137, n. 3.

Indefinite pronouns, 353, 487.  
 use of *quis* and *quisquam*, 354.

Indirect object, 57, 506.

Indirect questions, 327, 546.

Indirect statements, 368, 544.

Indirect subordinate clauses, 390, 545.

Infinitive, formation, 21, 365, 370.  
 omission of *esse* in fut. act. and perf. pass., p. 127, n. 1.  
 in indirect statements, 368, 544.  
 use of tenses, 374, 548.

Intensive pronoun, declension, 205, 484.  
 use, 209.

Interrogative pronoun, 145, 486.

Intransitive verbs with *dat.*, 224, 507.

**Ipse**, declension, 205, 484.  
 use, 209.

**Is**, declension, 483.  
 use, 130, 197.

**Iste**, declension, 483.  
 use, 114.

Locative, 250, 529.

**Mālō**, conjugation, 409, 496.

Manner, abl. of, 321, 520.

Means, abl. of, 64, 518.

Measure of difference, abl. of, 315, 523.

**Mille**, declension, 480.

**nē**, in clauses of purpose, 261, 534.  
 in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.

**Neuter**, declension, 288.

**Nōlō**, conjugation, 409, 496.

Nominative, subject, 31, 504.

Nouns, see *Declension*.  
 agreement, 72, 501.

**Nūllus**, declension, 288.

Numerals:  
 cardinal, 335, 479; declension, 336, 480; use, 338.  
 ordinal, 341, 479.

Object, direct, 32, 514.  
 indirect, 57, 506.

Order of words, 554-566.

Ordinal numerals, 341, 479.

Participles, formation, 219.  
 declension, 220, 470.  
 fut. act. and gerundive with *sum*, 221, 423, 427.  
 agreement, 225.  
 translation, 226; p. 139, n. 2.

Past, tense-sign in indicative, 52.  
 use, 53, 120.  
 formation in subjunctive, 270.

Past perfect, formation in indicative, 135.  
 formation in subjunctive, 329.

Perfect, personal endings in indicative active, 119, 488.  
 formation in indicative passive, 124.  
 uses, 120.  
 formation in subjunctive, 323.

- Periphrastic conjugation, active, 423.  
passive, 427.
- Personal endings, 488.  
active, 11, 51.  
passive, 37.  
perf. ind. act., 119.  
pres. imp., 347.
- Personal pronouns, declension, 481.  
use of *is* instead of, 197.
- Place, where, 250, 253, 529.  
to which, 254, 530.  
from which, 255, 531.
- Plūs**, declension, 312, 472.
- Position of words, 554-566.
- Possession, dat. of, 421, 512.
- Possessive adjectives, 199, 210.
- Possum**, conjugation, 387, 494.
- Postquam**, perf. ind. with, 169, 533.
- Predicate noun, 72, 501.
- Present, stem, 19, 21, 43, 257.  
historical, p. 86, n. 1.  
formation in subjunctive, 257.
- Principal parts, 125.
- Pronominal adjectives, 288, 465.
- Pronouns, see the particular word.
- Pronunciation, 2-4, 6-8.
- Prōsum**, conjugation, 387, 495.
- Purpose, various ways of expressing, 442.  
clauses of, 261, 534.  
relative clauses of, 267, 535.  
*quō*-clauses of, 412, 536.  
supine in **um** expressing, 440, 549.  
dat. of, 301, 510.
- Quam**, in comparisons, 309, 522.  
with superlative, 375.
- Quantity, vowels, 4.  
syllables, 7.
- Qui**, declension, 485.
- Quīdam**, 353, 487.
- Quis** (interrog.), 145, 486.  
(indef.), 353, 354, 487.
- Quisquam**, 353, 354, 487.
- Quisque**, 353, 487.
- Quō**-clauses of purpose, 412, 536.
- Reason, abl. of, 106, 521.
- Reflexive pronoun, declension, 204, 482.  
use, 208; p. 119, n. 1.
- Relative clauses:  
of purpose, 267, 535.  
of result, 281, 539.  
descriptive, 292, 541.
- Relative pronoun, declension, 485.  
agreement, 143, 503.
- Respect, abl. of, 175, 525.
- Result, clauses of, 280, 538.  
relative clauses of, 281, 539.  
substantive clauses of, 286, 540.
- Semi-deponent verbs, 382.
- Separation, abl. of, 133, 516.
- Situation, **cum**-clauses of, 407, 542.
- Sōlus**, declension, 288.
- Sounds, 2.
- Subject, 31, 504.  
omission, 198.  
in indirect statements, 368, 544.
- Subjunctive, formation of present, 257; of past, 270; of perfect, 323; of past perfect, 329.  
in clauses of purpose, 261, 267, 534, 535.  
in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.  
in clauses of result, 280, 281, 286, 538-540.  
in descriptive relative clauses, 292, 541.  
in **cum**-clauses of situation, 407, 542.

- Subjunctive** (*continued*)  
 in causal and adversative *cum*-clauses, 402, 543.  
 in indirect subordinate clauses, 390, 545.  
   n indirect questions, 327, 546.  
 use of tenses, 333, 547.  
 in less vivid future conditional complexes, 450, 455, 552.  
 in conditional complexes contrary to fact, 454, 455, 553.  
**Substantive, adjective used as**, p. 61, n. 1; p. 75, n. 2.  
   clauses of volition, 268, 537.  
   clauses of result, 286, 540.  
**Suī**, declension, 204, 482.  
   use, 208.  
**Sum**, conjugation, 493.  
**Supine**, 437.  
   use: in *um*, 440, 549; in *ū*, 441.  
**Syllables**, 6.  
   quantity, 7.  
**Synopsis of verbs**, 359.  
  
**Tendency, dat. of**, 301, 510.  
**Tenses, harmony of**, 333, 547.  
   with historical present, p. 132, n. 1.  
   use of infinitive tenses, 374, 548.  
   For formation and tense-sign, see the name of the tense.  
**Time, acc. of duration of**, 339, 515.  
   abl. of, 344, 526.  
**Tōtus**, declension, 288.  
**Trēs**, declension, 480.  
**Tū**, declension, 481.  
  
**Ubi, perf. ind. with**, 169, 533.  
**Ūllus**, declension, 288.  
**Ūnus**, declension, 288, 465.  
**Ut**, in clauses of purpose, 261, 534.  
   in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.  
   in clauses of result, 280, 286, 538, 540.  
**Uter**, declension, 288, 465.  
**Uterque**, declension, 288.  
  
**Verb, endings**, 358; see also *Personal endings*. For formation and tense-sign, see the name of the tense; also *Infinitive, Participles, Gerund, Supine*.  
   first conjugation, 489.  
   four regular conjugations, 490.  
   in *iō* of third conjugation, 177, 491.  
   deponent, 377, 492.  
   semi-deponent, 382.  
   irregular, see the particular word.  
   synopsis, 359.  
   active periphrastic conjugation, 423.  
   passive periphrastic conjugation, 427.  
   agreement, 16, 500.  
**Vetus**, declension, 469.  
**Vīs**, declension, 463.  
**Vocative**, 243.  
**Volition, substantive clauses of**, 268, 537.  
**Volō**, conjugation, 409, 496.













